

# **SPECIFICATION**

# IAO LEVEL 3 DIPLOMA IN ADULT CARE

**QUALIFICATION NUMBER: 610/0510/1** 



Approved by





# **Change Control Sheet**

Innovate Awarding will continuously review all support material to ensure its accuracy. All amendments will be recorded on the below change control table.

| Version<br>Number | Date<br>Revised | Description of Revision   | Page<br>Affected |
|-------------------|-----------------|---|------------------|
| 2                 | 10.03.2022      | Addition of optional unit <b>R/616/7914</b><br>Anatomy, physiology, health and wellbeing                                    | 21, 269          |
| 3                 | 13.03.2023      | Amendment to Additional Information in optional<br>unit Y/616/5386 Understand how to<br>provide support in end of life care | 144              |



Innovate Awarding is an Ofqual regulated awarding organisation with an innovative and dynamic approach. We develop off-the-shelf, customised and fully bespoke qualifications across a growing number of sectors – all on the Regulated Qualifications Framework (RQF).

Our portfolio is always growing and we currently have qualifications in the following sectors:

| Active Leisure                 | Health and Social Care   |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>Business and Management</b> | Hospitality and Catering |
| Childcare                      | IT                       |
| Employability                  | Logistics                |
| Retail                         | Education and Training   |

We currently offer over 100 qualifications and we're continuously developing and diversifying our portfolio. Please visit our website regularly to keep up-to-date www.innovateawarding.org.

This document will be updated if there are any changes, so it is important to make sure you are working from the most up-to-date version, which is available to download from our website.

This specification also provides details on administration, quality assurance policies and the requirements as well as responsibilities that are associated with the delivery of vocational qualifications.

Innovate Awarding is an Ofqual-regulated Awarding Organisation in England.

If you have any questions regarding qualifications in general, aspects of specific qualifications or our quality assurance policies and procedures, visit our website where a lot more information is available.

If you cannot find what you are looking for on our website, please call or email our customer support team:

Telephone:0117 314 2800Email:contactus@innovateawarding.org

"We work with a wide variety of organisations such as employers, training providers, FE colleges and Sector Skills Councils and develop off-the-shelf, customised and bespoke qualifications."



# **Qualification summary**

| Qualification Accreditation<br>Number (QAN) | 610/0510/1   |
|---|--|
| Operational date                            | 1 May 2022   |
| Qualification review date                   | 30 <sup>th</sup> April 2025  |
| Guided Learning Hours (GLH)                 | 402  |
| Total Qualification Time (TQT)              | 580 hours  |
| RQF level                                   | 3  |
| Qualification credit value                  | 58 credits   |
| Minimum credits at/above level              | 50 credits   |
| Aims and objectives of the qualification    | This qualification develops the knowledge and skills needed<br>when working in a senior role with adults in adult care<br>environments. It covers a wide range of areas including<br>supporting individuals with their physical and emotional care,<br>daily living needs and care procedures. |
| Assessment requirements                     | This qualification is assessed through Portfolio of Evidence.<br>This qualification is internally assessed and internally quality<br>assured by Centre staff and externally quality assured by<br>Innovate Awarding External Quality Advisors (EQAs).  |
| Entry guidance                              | There are no formal entry requirements for this<br>qualification. This qualification is suitable for those who<br>work within the adult care sector. It provides learners with<br>an opportunity to demonstrate their competence in a wide<br>range of job roles.                              |
| Progression opportunities                   | Learners who achieve this qualification could progress into<br>employment in a senior role in the adult care sector.<br>Learners could also progress to further qualifications in<br>management and leadership, either in a generic context or<br>specific to the adult care sector.           |
| Funding                                     | For details on eligibility for government funding please refer<br>to the following websites:<br><u>http://www.education.gov.uk/section96/</u><br><u>https://www.gov.uk/government/organisations/education-<br/>and-skills-funding-agency</u>   |



# **Innovate Awarding**

When you work with Innovate Awarding, you're working with an awarding organisation that sets itself apart – a dynamic company with a collaborative approach to doing business. We're consultative and innovative...everything that our customers say they want an awarding organisation to be.

We're easy to work with, committed and passionate about exceeding our customers' expectations. We're not tied down by bureaucracy and red tape and can think outside the box and respond quickly to our customers' needs.

We have a Performance Pledge that details guaranteed response times. Copies of these can be found on our website <u>www.innovateawarding.org</u>.

# Feedback

Your feedback is very important to us. We're always open to suggestions when it comes to enhancing and improving our services, products and systems. Email us at <u>contactus@innovateawarding.org</u> or call us on 0117 314 2800.

# Complaints

If we do get things wrong, we'll make every effort to resolve your issues quickly and efficiently. If you'd like to raise a formal complaint then we recommend you read our Complaints Procedure which can be found on our website.

## Fees

Our fees structure is transparent and straightforward. Our fees are published on our website in a clear format with no hidden charges. Unlike other awarding organisations, we do not charge an annual centre fee. Visit our website to compare our fees.

## **Enquiries and appeals**

We recognise that sometimes decisions are made that a centre (or learner) may wish to appeal. We have an Enquiries and Appeals Policy and Process on our website that sets out guidelines on grounds for appeal and the process.

## **Data Protection**

Innovate Awarding takes the protection of data seriously; we have a data protection statement outlining how we and our centres, comply with the current legislation on data protection. This statement can be found on our website.



# **Equality and Diversity**

Innovate Awarding is committed to giving everyone who wants to gain one of our qualifications an equal opportunity of achieving it in line with current UK legislation (Equality Act 2010) and EU directives.

Centres are required, as conditions of approval, to use an equality and diversity policy that works together with ours and that they maintain an effective complaint and appeals process. We expect centres to tell learners how to find and use their own equality and diversity and appeals processes. For information, please visit our website.

# **Reasonable Adjustment and Special Consideration**

All learners must be treated fairly and equally and be given every opportunity to achieve our/the qualifications. A copy of our policy on Reasonable Adjustments and Special Considerations, and application form, can be found on our website.

## **Malpractice and Maladministration**

Innovate Awarding has a responsibility to do everything it can to prevent any malpractice or maladministration from occurring, and where it has already occurred, ensuring action is taken proportionate to the gravity and scope of the occurrence.

A copy of our policy and procedure on Malpractice and Maladministration is available on our website.

# **Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL)**

RPL recognises how the contribution of a learner's previous experience could contribute to a qualification or unit. Innovate Awarding have produced guidance on RPL and this can be found within our Information and Guidance for Centres on our website.

Please note the above is not a comprehensive guide to running qualifications. Once approved centres must adhere to the Centre Agreement and Information and Guidance for Centres.



# The Regulated Qualifications Framework (RQF)

# What is the RQF?

The Regulated Qualifications Framework (RQF) is an Ofqual regulated system of cataloguing qualifications. Qualifications on the RQF can be found by their size or level. Qualifications at a given level can differ depending on their content and purpose.

All of Innovate Awarding's qualifications are on the RQF.

#### **Qualification Level**

The level reflects the challenge or difficulty of the qualification. There are eight levels of qualification from 1 to 8, supported by three "Entry" levels.

#### **Qualification Size**

The size of a qualification reflects the estimated total amount of time it would take the average learner to study and be assessed. The size of a qualification is expressed in terms of Total Qualification Time (TQT). The time spent being taught or supervised, rather than studying alone, is the Guided Learning Hours (GLH).

Qualifications can sit at different levels, but require similar amounts of study and assessment. Similarly, qualifications at the same level can take different amounts of time to complete.



#### Skills for Care and Development Assessment Principles

#### 1. Introduction

- 1.1 Skills for Care and Development (SfCD) is an alliance of key organisations from England, Northern Ireland, Ireland, Scotland and Wales with varied roles across social care, social work and early years and with remits across workforce development and regulation.
- 1.2 This document sets out the minimum expected principles and approaches to assessment and should be read alongside qualification regulatory arrangements and any specific requirements set out for particular qualifications. Additional information and guidance regarding assessment can be obtained from Awarding Organisations and from SfCD partner organisations.
- 1.3 The information is intended to support the quality assurance processes of Awarding Organisations that offer qualifications in the Sector.
- 1.4 Where Skills for Care and Development qualifications are jointly supported with Skills for Health, Skill for Health assessment principles should also be considered.
- 1.5 Throughout this document the term unit is used for simplicity, but this can mean module or any other similar term.
- 1.6 In all work we would expect assessors to observe and review learners practising core values and attitudes required for quality practice. These include embracing dignity and respect, rights, choice, equality, diversity, inclusion, individuality and confidentiality. All learners should follow the appropriate standards for conduct and all those involved in any form of assessment must know and embrace the values and standards of practice set out in these documents.
- 1.7 Assessors should ensure that the voices and choices of people who use services drive their practice and that of their learner. This will be apparent throughout the evidence provided for a learner's practice'.
- 2. **Good practice** dictates the following:
- 2.1 Learners must be registered with the Awarding Organisation before formal assessment commences.
- 2.2 Assessors must be able to evidence and justify the assessment decisions that they have made.
- 2.3 Assessment decisions for skills based learning outcomes must be made during the learner's normal work activity by an occupationally qualified, competent and knowledgeable assessor.
- 2.4 Skills based assessment must include direct observation as the main source of evidence and must be carried out over an appropriate period of time. Evidence



should be naturally occurring and so minimise the impact on individuals who use care and support, their families and carers.

- 2.5 Any knowledge evidence integral to skills based learning outcomes may be generated outside of the work environment, but the final assessment decision must show application of knowledge within the real work environment.
- 2.6 Assessment decisions for skills based learning outcomes must be made by an assessor qualified to make assessment decisions. It is the responsibility of the Awarding Organisation to confirm that their assessors are suitably qualified to make assessment decisions.
- 2.7 Simulation may not be used as an assessment method for skills based learning outcomes except where this is specified in the assessment requirements. In these cases, the use of simulation should be restricted to obtaining evidence where the evidence cannot be generated through normal work activity. Video or audio recording should not be used where this compromises the privacy, dignity or confidentiality of any individual or family using services.
- 2.8 Where the assessor is not occupationally competent in a specialist area, expert witnesses can be used for direct observation where they have occupational expertise in the specialist area. The use of expert witnesses should be determined and agreed by the assessor, in line with internal quality assurance arrangements and Awarding Organisation requirements for assessment of units within the qualification and the sector. The assessor remains responsible for the final assessment decision.
- 2.9 Where an assessor is occupationally competent but not yet qualified as an assessor, assessment decisions must rest with a qualified assessor. This may be expressed through a robust countersigning strategy that supports and validates assessment decisions made by as yet unqualified assessors, until the point where they meet the requirements for qualification.
- 2.10 Witness testimony from others, including those who use services and their families, can enrich assessment and make an important contribution to the evidence used in assessment decisions.
- 2.11 Assessment of knowledge based learning outcomes:
  - may take place in or outside of a real work environment
  - must be made by an occupationally qualified and knowledgeable assessor, qualified to make assessment decisions
  - must be robust, reliable, valid and current; any assessment evidence using preset automated tests, including e-assessment portfolios, must meet these requirements and can only contribute to overall decisions made by the assessor



- 2.12 It is the responsibility of the Awarding Organisation to ensure that those involved in assessment can demonstrate their continuing professional development, up to date skills, knowledge and understanding of practice at or above the level of the unit.
- 2.13 Regardless of the form of recording used for assessment evidence, the guiding principle must be that evidence gathered for assessment must comply with policy and legal requirements in relation to confidentiality and data protection. Information collected must be traceable for internal and external verification purposes. Additionally assessors must ensure they are satisfied the evidence presented is traceable, auditable and authenticated and meets assessment principles.

#### 3. Quality Assurance

- 3.1 Internal quality assurance is key to ensuring that the assessment of evidence is of a consistent and appropriate quality. Those carrying out internal quality assurance must be occupationally knowledgeable in the unit they are assuring and be qualified to make quality assurance decisions. It is the responsibility of the Awarding Organisation to confirm that those involved in internal quality assurance are suitably qualified for this role.
- 3.2 Those involved in internal quality assurance must have the authority and the resources to monitor the work of assessors. They have a responsibility to highlight and propose ways to address any challenges in the assessment process (eg to ensure suitable assessors are assigned to reflect the strengths and needs of particular learners).
- 3.3 Those carrying out external quality assurance must be occupationally knowledgeable and understand the policy and practice context of the qualifications in which they are involved. It is the responsibility of the Awarding Organisation to confirm that those involved in external quality assurance are suitably qualified for this role.
- 3.4 Those involved in external quality assurance have a responsibility to promote continuous improvement in the quality of assessment processes.

## 4. Definitions

- 4.1 **Occupationally competent:** This means that each assessor must be capable of carrying out the full requirements of the area they are assessing Occupational competence may be at unit level for specialist areas: this could mean that different assessors may be needed across a whole qualification while the final assessment decision for a qualification remains with the lead assessor. Being occupationally competent means also being occupationally knowledgeable. This occupational competence should be maintained annually through clearly demonstrable continuing learning and professional development.
- 4.2 **Occupationally knowledgeable:** This means that each assessor should possess, knowledge and understanding relevant to the qualifications and / or units they are assessing. Occupationally knowledgeable assessors may assess at unit level for



specialist areas within a qualification, while the final assessment decision for a qualification remains with the lead assessor. This occupational knowledge should be maintained annually through clearly demonstrable continuing learning and professional development.

- 4.3 **Qualified to make assessment decisions:** This means that each assessor must hold a qualification suitable to support the making of appropriate and consistent assessment decisions. Awarding Organisations will determine what will qualify those making assessment decisions according to the unit of skills under assessment. The Joint Awarding Body Quality Group maintains a list of assessor qualifications, see Appendix C.
- 4.4 Qualified to make quality assurance decisions: Awarding Organisations will determine what will qualify those undertaking internal and external quality assurances to make decisions about that quality assurance.
- 4.5 Expert witness: An expert witness must:
  - have a working knowledge of the units for which they are providing expert testimony
  - be occupationally competent in the area for which they are providing expert testimony
  - have EITHER any qualification in assessment of workplace performance OR a work role which involves evaluating the everyday practice of staff within their area of expertise.
- 4.6 Witness testimony: Witness testimony is an account of practice that has been witnessed or experienced by someone other than the assessor and the learner. Witness testimony has particular value in confirming reliability and authenticity, 5 particularly in the assessment of practice in sensitive situations. Witness testimony provides supporting information for assessment decisions and should not be used as the only evidence of skills.

## Appendix C: Joint awarding body quality group – assessor qualifications

- D32 Assess Candidate Performance and D33 Assess Candidate Using Differing Sources of Evidence
- A1 Assess Candidate Performance Using a Range of Methods and A2 Assessing Candidates' Performance through Observation QCF Level 3 Award in Assessing Competence in the Work Environment (for competence / skills learning outcomes only)
- QCF Level 3 Award in Assessing Vocationally Related Achievement (for knowledge learning outcomes only)
- QCF Level 3 Certificate in Assessing Vocational Achievement
- Qualified Teacher Status
- Certificate in Education in Post Compulsory Education (PCE)
- Social Work Post Qualifying Award in Practice Teaching
- Certificate in Teaching in the Lifelong Learning Sector (CTLLS)
- Diploma in Teaching in the Lifelong Learning sector (DTLLS)
- Mentorship and Assessment in Health and Social Care Settings
- Mentorship in Clinical/Health Care Practice



- L&D9DI Assessing workplace competence using Direct and Indirect methods (Scotland)
- L&D9D Assessing workplace competence using Direct methods (Scotland)
- NOCN Tutor/Assessor Award
- Level 3 Awards and Certificate in Assessing the Quality of Assessment (QCF)
- Level 4 Awards and Certificates in Assuring the Quality of Assessment (QCF)
- Level 3 Award in Education and Training JABQG Sept 2014 Version 5
- Level 4 Certificate in Education and Training
- Level 5 Diploma in Education and Training
- Level 3 Certificate in Assessing Vocational Achievement (RQF)



# **Qualification Structure**

Learners must achieve at least 58 credits to gain this qualification. These consist of 39 credits from the mandatory units and a minimum of 19 credits from the optional units. Please note that at least 11 credits of the 19 optional unit credits must be from optional units at Level 3 or above.

The minimum Guided Learning Hours (GLH) for this qualification is 402 hours.

The Total Qualification Time (TQT) for this qualification is 580 hours.

#### **Unit Structures**

Mandatory and optional units are listed below.

#### Embedding and application of digital skills

Technology plays an increasingly significant role within the adult care sector. Learners are therefore encouraged to embed technological and digital skills within their day-to-day work and also within their evidence demonstrating their knowledge and competence against assessment criteria. Learners are encouraged to consider how they would apply their digital skills and knowledge to their daily job role, for example when updating care plans, or recording medication which has been administered.

This qualification provides learners with the opportunity to select digital skills units as optional units. The units introduced include Using e-mail, Using the internet and Using mobile IT devices. All of the units introduced are relevant to the current adult social care landscape; enabling safe use and application of the required processes, enhancing service provision and supporting improvements to everyday living. Organisations and their staff must be encouraged and supported to develop systems, processes and ways of working to become digitally capable, or risk losing their share of the market.

In addition, learners can be supported to plan and use evidence gathered for other units as evidence for their chosen digital and optional units. For example, when supporting an individual to review their care plan, evidence can be gathered for a selection of units which could include communication, administering medication and reporting and recording, all of which involve digital skills.

Evidence of digital skills being used in the workplace can include video recordings, photos, observations and reflective accounts, all within the boundaries of confidentiality.



# Mandatory units

| Unit ref   | Unit title   | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|--|-------|-----------------|-----|
| H/650/1421 | Ways of working in care settings                         | 3     | 2               | 16  |
| J/650/1422 | Safeguarding in care settings                            | 3     | 3               | 24  |
| K/650/1423 | Mental capacity and restrictive practice                 | 3     | 3               | 22  |
| L/650/1424 | Duty of care   | 3     | 3               | 21  |
| M/650/1425 | Promote effective communication in care settings         | 3     | 3               | 24  |
| R/650/1426 | Handle information effectively in care settings          | 3     | 2               | 16  |
| T/650/1427 | Person-centred practice                                  | 3     | 3               | 20  |
| Y/650/1428 | Promote choice and independence in care settings         | 3     | 3               | 22  |
| A/650/1429 | Health and wellbeing in care settings                    | 3     | 3               | 23  |
| H/650/1430 | Equality, diversity, inclusion and human rights          | 3     | 3               | 25  |
| J/650/1431 | Health and safety in care settings                       | 3     | 5               | 39  |
| K/650/1432 | Promote continuous personal development in care settings | 3     | 3               | 25  |
| L/650/1433 | Manage personal wellbeing                                | 3     | 3               | 20  |



# **Optional units**

# Leadership and management

| Unit ref   | Unit title                             | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|--|-------|-----------------|-----|
| R/616/6150 | Leadership and management fundamentals | 3     | 3               | 12  |
| D/616/6152 | Leading effective teams                | 3     | 2               | 6   |

## Dementia

| Unit ref   | Unit title   | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|--|-------|-----------------|-----|
| R/616/5306 | Understand the process and experience of dementia  | 3     | 3               | 22  |
| H/650/0865 | Understand the role of communication<br>and interactions with individuals who<br>have dementia           | 3     | 4               | 22  |
| Y/618/5136 | Enable rights and choices of individuals with dementia   | 3     | 5               | 29  |
| K/618/5044 | End of life and dementia care  | 3     | 3               | 20  |
| L/618/5148 | Equality, diversity and inclusion in dementia care practice  | 3     | 4               | 31  |
| J/650/1440 | Support individuals with dementia to eat and drink   | 3     | 3               | 16  |
| D/650/0863 | Understand the administration of medication to individuals with dementia using a person-centred approach | 3     | 3               | 15  |



# Disability

| Unit ref   | Unit title  | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|---|-------|-----------------|-----|
| Y/616/5310 | Understand models of disability   | 3     | 3               | 26  |
| K/616/5313 | Support young people with a disability to make the transition into adulthood                        | 3     | 5               | 40  |
| T/616/5315 | Understand positive risk taking for<br>individuals with disabilities                                | 3     | 3               | 25  |
| K/650/1441 | Support families who have had a child with a disability   | 3     | 2               | 6   |
| Y/650/0861 | Support parents with disabilities   | 3     | 7               | 43  |
| L/650/1442 | Principles of supporting young people<br>with a disability to make the transition<br>into adulthood | 3     | 4               | 23  |
| T/650/0860 | Work with professionals and agencies<br>to support individuals with physical<br>disabilities        | 3     | 3               | 24  |
| J/650/0875 | Support individuals with multiple conditions and disabilities                                       | 3     | 5               | 34  |
| M/650/1443 | Support individuals with a learning disability to access healthcare                                 | 3     | 3               | 25  |

# Sensory loss

| Unit ref   | Unit title   | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|--|-------|-----------------|-----|
| L/650/0868 | Understand sensory loss                                  | 3     | 3               | 24  |
| A/650/0871 | Support the assessment of individuals with sensory loss  | 3     | 4               | 31  |
| L/650/0859 | Support communication with individuals with sensory loss | 3     | 4               | 29  |
| Y/616/5355 | Support the promotion of awareness of sensory loss       | 3     | 1               | 6   |



# Assistive technology

| Unit ref   | Unit title  | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|---|-------|-----------------|-----|
| M/618/5112 | Promote rights and values in assistive technology in social care            | 3     | 3               | 17  |
| K/616/5361 | Installation, maintenance and removal of assistive technology in adult care | 3     | 2               | 15  |
| A/616/5171 | Interact with and support individuals using telecommunications              | 3     | 5               | 36  |
| R/650/1444 | Support individuals in the use of assistive technology                      | 4     | 4               | 32  |

## Autistic spectrum conditions

| Unit ref   | Unit title  | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|---|-------|-----------------|-----|
| L/616/5319 | Understand how to support individuals with autistic spectrum conditions | 3     | 3               | 26  |
| K/650/0867 | Support individuals with autistic spectrum conditions                   | 3     | 5               | 37  |

## Mental health

| Unit ref   | Unit title  | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|---|-------|-----------------|-----|
| J/616/5044 | Understand mental wellbeing and mental health promotion | 3     | 3               | 20  |
| H/616/5052 | Understand mental health problems                       | 3     | 3               | 16  |



# Acquired brain injury

| Unit ref   | Unit title  | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|---|-------|-----------------|-----|
| Y/616/5503 | Support families of individuals with acquired brain injury    | 2     | 3               | 24  |
| K/616/5439 | Understand the impact of acquired brain injury on individuals | 2     | 3               | 25  |

## End of life care

| Unit ref   | Unit title   | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|--|-------|-----------------|-----|
| K/618/5089 | Understand how to support individuals during the last days of life | 3     | 5               | 32  |
| Y/616/5386 | Understand how to provide support in<br>end of life care           | 3     | 4               | 33  |

# Elderly people

| Unit ref   | Unit title   | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|--|-------|-----------------|-----|
| K/650/0876 | Understand the effects of ageing in activity provision | 3     | 2               | 17  |
| F/618/5146 | Understand the factors affecting older people          | 3     | 3               | 17  |

# **Specific conditions**

| Unit ref   | Unit title                                  | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|---|-------|-----------------|-----|
| M/650/0878 | Diabetes awareness                          | 3     | 7               | 46  |
| T/618/5130 | Stroke awareness                            | 2     | 4               | 28  |
| F/650/0873 | Understand stroke care management           | 3     | 6               | 37  |
| M/650/0869 | Understand Parkinson's for adult care staff | 3     | 4               | 26  |



## Self-directed support

| Unit ref   | Unit title                                     | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|--|-------|-----------------|-----|
| Y/618/5072 | Understanding self-directed support            | 3     | 4               | 26  |
| H/650/0856 | Support individuals with self-directed support | 3     | 7               | 43  |

# Nutrition, hydration and personal hygiene

| Unit ref   | Unit title  | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|---|-------|-----------------|-----|
| J/616/5416 | Promote nutrition and hydration in health and social care settings  | 3     | 6               | 34  |
| L/650/0877 | Principles of supporting an individual to maintain personal hygiene | 2     | 2               | 15  |
| T/616/5475 | Support individuals to maintain personal hygiene                    | 2     | 2               | 17  |

## **Person-centred models**

| Unit ref   | Unit title  | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|---|-------|-----------------|-----|
| T/618/5161 | Facilitate person centred assessment, planning, implementation and review | 3     | 6               | 45  |
| K/616/5408 | Facilitate active support   | 3     | 5               | 36  |
| F/650/0864 | Introduction to personalisation in social care                            | 3     | 4               | 23  |

# **Relationships and living arrangements**

| Unit ref   | Unit title   | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|--|-------|-----------------|-----|
| Y/650/0870 | Develop and sustain effective working<br>relationships with staff in other<br>agencies | 3     | 4               | 27  |
| A/650/0862 | Support families in maintaining<br>relationships in their wider social<br>structures   | 3     | 4               | 24  |
| T/650/1445 | Support individuals to deal with personal relationship problems                        | 3     | 5               | 26  |



| K/618/5092 | Support individuals in their relationships                        | 3 | 4 | 27 |
|------------|---|---|---|----|
| F/616/5401 | Theories of relationships and social networks                     | 4 | 3 | 29 |
| D/650/0854 | Provide support for individuals within a shared lives arrangement | 3 | 5 | 35 |
| D/650/0872 | Enable individuals to negotiate different<br>environments         | 3 | 3 | 20 |
| F/618/5096 | Prepare to support individuals within a shared lives arrangement  | 3 | 5 | 31 |

# Advocacy

| Unit ref   | Unit title  | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|---|-------|-----------------|-----|
| F/616/5317 | Maintain the independent advocacy relationship                    | 3     | 6               | 33  |
| M/618/5160 | Responding to the advocacy needs of<br>different groups of people | 3     | 4               | 21  |
| Y/650/1446 | Provide independent advocacy support                              | 4     | 6               | 35  |
| J/650/0866 | The purpose and principles of<br>independent advocacy             | 3     | 5               | 30  |

# Substance misuse

| Unit ref   | Unit title  | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|---|-------|-----------------|-----|
| F/618/5163 | Test for substance misuse   | 3     | 4               | 30  |
| K/650/0858 | Support individuals through detoxification programmes   | 4     | 5               | 31  |
| A/618/5081 | Increase awareness about drugs,<br>alcohol or other substances                                    | 3     | 7               | 42  |
| F/650/0855 | Help individuals address their substance misuse through an action plan                            | 3     | 4               | 28  |
| A/650/1447 | Provide support services to those<br>affected by someone else's substance<br>use                  | 3     | 4               | 24  |
| H/618/5141 | Assist with the transfer of individuals<br>who misuse substances between<br>agencies and services | 3     | 3               | 20  |



| D/650/1448 | Supply and exchange injecting equipment for individuals  | 3 | 3 | 18 |
|------------|--|---|---|----|
| J/618/5116 | Carry out initial assessments to identify<br>and prioritise the needs of substance<br>misusers | 3 | 5 | 30 |
| F/650/1449 | Support individuals who are substance users  | 3 | 7 | 42 |
| J/650/0857 | Carrying out comprehensive substance misuse assessment   | 3 | 7 | 48 |

# Other optional units

| Unit ref   | Unit title  | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|---|-------|-----------------|-----|
| T/616/5458 | Support use of medication in social care settings                       | 3     | 5               | 40  |
| K/616/5246 | Undertake agreed pressure area care                                     | 2     | 4               | 30  |
| Y/616/5288 | Undertake physiological measurements                                    | 3     | 3               | 23  |
| J/618/5066 | Supporting infection prevention and control in social care              | 3     | 3               | 20  |
| F/618/5132 | Provide support for therapy sessions                                    | 2     | 3               | 16  |
| Y/618/5265 | Prepare environments and resources for use during healthcare activities | 2     | 3               | 17  |
| H/650/0874 | Contribute to raising awareness of health issues                        | 4     | 5               | 36  |
| T/616/5413 | Support individuals to stay safe from harm or abuse                     | 3     | 4               | 27  |
| J/618/5052 | Assess the needs of carers and families                                 | 3     | 4               | 28  |
| T/618/5144 | Contribute to effective team working in adult care settings             | 3     | 4               | 25  |
| R/616/7914 | Anatomy, physiology, health and wellbeing                               | 5     | 5               | 23  |



# Digital skills

| Unit ref   | Unit title                      | Level | Credit<br>value | GLH |
|------------|---------------------------------|-------|-----------------|-----|
| J/502/4156 | Improving productivity using IT | 2     | 4               | 30  |
| M/502/4300 | Using email                     | 2     | 3               | 20  |
| A/502/4297 | Using the internet              | 2     | 4               | 30  |
| K/502/4375 | Using mobile IT devices         | 2     | 2               | 15  |
| H/502/9154 | Internet safety for IT users    | 1     | 3               | 20  |
| R/502/4385 | IT software fundamentals        | 2     | 3               | 20  |
| L/502/4207 | IT user fundamentals            | 2     | 3               | 20  |
| Y/502/4257 | IT security for users           | 2     | 2               | 15  |
| M/502/4619 | Project management software     | 2     | 4               | 30  |
| M/502/4622 | Presentation software           | 2     | 4               | 30  |
| F/502/4625 | Spreadsheet software            | 2     | 4               | 30  |
| R/502/4631 | Website software                | 2     | 4               | 30  |
| R/502/4628 | Word processing software        | 2     | 4               | 30  |



# Mandatory units

| Title:  | H/650/1421 Ways of working in care settings   |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 2   |
| GLH:  | 16  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:                      | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand agreed ways of<br/>working</li> </ol>   | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe why it is important to work within the scope of own role, responsibility and training</li> <li>1.2 Explain what is meant by the term 'delegated healthcare task'</li> <li>1.3 Identify who might delegate a healthcare task and why</li> <li>1.4 Explain own role in quality assurance processes and promoting positive experiences for individuals accessing care</li> </ul>   |
| 2. Work in ways that are agreed with the employer           | <ul> <li>2.1 Identify how to access full and up to date details of <b>agreed ways of working</b></li> <li>2.2 Demonstrate how to implement agreed ways of working</li> </ul>  |
| 3. Understand <b>working relationships</b> in care settings | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain how a working relationship is different from a personal relationship</li> <li>3.2 Describe different working relationships in care settings</li> <li>3.3 Explain why it is important to work in partnership with others</li> <li>3.4 Describe different skills and approaches used when working in partnership with others</li> <li>3.5 Identify how and when to access support and advice about: <ul> <li>partnership working</li> <li>resolving conflicts in relationships and partnerships</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |



- 4. Work in partnership with **others**
- 4.1 Demonstrate ways of working that can help improve partnership working

**AC1.2 Delegated healthcare task**: a delegated healthcare task is a health intervention or activity usually of a clinical nature, that a registered healthcare professional delegates to a paid care worker. It is recognised that not all care and support workers will have healthcare tasks delegated to them. However, it is important learners develop an understanding of what these are and the requirements around them. This will help to prepare learners for potential delegated responsibility in the future. Delegated healthcare tasks may include, but are not limited to:

- supporting skin integrity and wound healing by changing dressing
- supporting a person's nutrition using a PEG (Percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy)
- supporting a person to manage their diabetes through insulin administration and monitoring

**AC1.4 Quality assurance processes:** this will include own role, understanding and accountability with internal governance and processes used such as assurance and auditing procedures.

**AC2.1 Agreed ways of working:** these will include policies and procedures, job descriptions and less formal agreements and expected practices.

**LO3 Working relationships:** learners must consider the following groups of people they have working relationships with (unless their role means they do not have a relationship with a particular group of people):

- individuals accessing care and support services
- the friends, family and loved ones of those accessing care and support services
- peers and team members
- other colleagues (paid and volunteers) within the organisation
- managers and senior management
- paid workers and volunteers from other organisations and teams

LO4 Others: in this context, others may include:

- individuals accessing care and support services
- the friends, family and loved ones of those accessing care and support services
- peers and team members
- manager and senior management
- paid workers and volunteers from other organisations and teams

| Unit aim (s)                         | The aim of this unit is for learners to explore |  |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|
|                                      | why it is important to follow agreed ways of    |  |
|                                      | working, and to identify the role of working    |  |
|                                      | relationships within settings.                  |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by | This qualification must be assessed in          |  |
| a sector or regulatory body          | accordance with the Assessment                  |  |
|                                      | Principles developed by Skills for Care         |  |
|                                      | and Development to complement                   |  |
|                                      | Ofqual requirements.                            |  |



| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit meets the specification   |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| and relevant national occupational      | published by Skills for Care in May |
| standards                               | 2021.                               |



| Title:  | J/650/1422 Safeguarding in care settings  |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 3   |
| GLH:  | 24  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand the national and local<br/>context of safeguarding and protection<br/>from abuse and neglect</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain relevant legislation,<br/>principles, national policies and<br/>frameworks and local systems that<br/>relate to safeguarding and protection<br/>from abuse and neglect</li> <li>1.2 Describe the roles of different agencies<br/>in safeguarding and protecting<br/>individuals' rights to live free from<br/>abuse and neglect</li> <li>1.3 Identify reports into serious failures in<br/>upholding individuals' rights to live free<br/>from abuse and neglect</li> <li>1.4 Describe how the reports identified<br/>influence current practice</li> <li>1.5 Identify where to find sources of<br/>information and advice about own role<br/>in safeguarding including:</li> <li>whistle blowing</li> <li>accountability for decision making<br/>and information sharing</li> </ul> |
| <ol> <li>Know how to recognise signs of abuse<br/>and neglect</li> </ol>  | <ul> <li>2.1 Define the terms: <ul> <li>safeguarding</li> <li>abuse</li> <li>harm</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.2 Describe the <b>factors</b> that contribute to an individual being more at risk of abuse and neglect</li> <li>2.3 Define the following terms: <ul> <li>physical abuse</li> <li>domestic abuse</li> <li>sexual abuse</li> <li>psychological abuse</li> <li>financial/material abuse</li> <li>modern slavery</li> <li>discriminatory abuse</li> <li>neglect/acts of omission</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |



|  | a a lf in a gla at   |
|--|--|
|  | • self-neglect   |
|  | 2.4 Identify indicators that an individual is being abused                       |
|  | 2.5 Describe the <b>indicators</b> of perpetrator                                |
|  | behaviour  |
| 3. Understand ways to reduce the         | 3.1 Explain how the likelihood of abuse  |
| likelihood of abuse or neglect occurring | might be reduced by:   |
|  | <ul> <li>working with person centred<br/>values</li> </ul>                       |
|  | <ul> <li>enabling active participation</li> </ul>                                |
|  | <ul> <li>promoting choice and rights</li> </ul>                                  |
|  | <ul> <li>working in partnership with others</li> </ul>                           |
|  | 3.2 Explain the importance of an accessible                                      |
|  | complaints procedure for reducing the  |
|  | likelihood of abuse  |
| 4. Know how to respond to suspected or   | 4.1 Describe the <b>actions</b> to take if there                                 |
| disclosed abuse and neglect              | are suspicions an individual is being  |
|  | abused or neglected  |
|  | 4.2 Explain how to respond if an individual discloses that they are being abused |
|  | 4.3 Identify issues relating to consent to                                       |
|  | share information  |
|  | 4.4 Describe how to share information  |
|  | about suspicions or disclosures of abuse   |
|  | or neglect   |
|  | 4.5 Explain how to keep the individuals and                                      |
|  | others appropriately informed and  |
|  | involved about their safeguarding  |
|  | concern in line with policies and  |
|  | <ul><li>4.6 Describe ways to ensure that evidence</li></ul>                      |
|  | is preserved   |
|  | 4.7 Explain how and when to seek support   |
|  | in relation to responding to   |
|  | safeguarding concerns  |
|  | 4.8 Describe how to respond to suspicion or                                      |
|  | disclosure that a child or young person  |
|  | is being abused or neglected   |
| 5. Know how to recognise and report      | 5.1 Describe unsafe practices that may   |
| unsafe practices                         | affect individuals' <b>wellbeing</b>   |
|  | 5.2 Explain what actions to take if unsafe                                       |
|  | 5.3 Describe what action to take if  |
|  | suspected abuse or unsafe practices  |
|  | have been reported but no action taken   |
|  | in response  |
| 6. Understand the principles of online   | 6.1 Explain the importance of balancing  |
| safety                                   | online safety measures with the benefits   |
|  | individuals can gain from accessing  |
|  |  |



| <ul> <li>online systems and individuals' right to make informed choices</li> <li>6.2 Describe the potential risks to individuals presented by:</li> </ul> |
|---|
| 6.2 Describe the potential risks to   |
|   |
| individuals presented by:   |
|   |
| use of electronic communication     devices   |
| use of the internet   |
| use of social networking sites  |
| carrying out financial transactions     online  |
| 6.3 Explain ways of working inclusively with  |
| individuals to reduce the risks presented   |
| by each of these types of activities  |
|   |

**AC1.1 Relevant legislation:** learners should consider how different legislation relates to and influences Safeguarding practices. This may include, but is not limited to:

- Liberty Protection Safeguards
- Mental Capacity Act 2005
- Human Rights Act 1998
- Equality Act 2010
- Mental Health Act 1983
- Health and Social Care Act 2012
- Care Act 2014

**AC1.1 Principles:** including, but not limited to, the 6 principles of safeguarding embedded within the Care Act 2014: Empowerment, Prevention, Proportionality, Protection, Partnership, Accountability.

AC1.1 National policies and frameworks: including, but not limited to: Making

Safeguarding Personal.

#### AC1.1 Local systems may include:

- employer/organisational policies and procedures
- multi-agency adult protection arrangements for a locality

**AC1.5 Whistle blowing:** where a person (the whistle blower) exposes any kind of information or activity that is deemed illegal, unethical, or incorrect.

#### AC2.2 Factors may include:

- a setting or situation
- the individual and their care and support needs

AC2.3 Domestic abuse: learners should consider acts of control and coercion.

**AC2.4 Indicators:** learners should consider different kinds of abuse/neglect and the physical, emotional, behavioural and social indicators that suggest they may be occurring or have occurred.

**Individual/s:** in this unit, 'individual' will usually mean the person supported by the learner but it may include those for whom there is no formal duty of care.



**AC3.1 Person centred values:** values include individuality, rights, choice, privacy, independence, dignity, respect, care, compassion, courage, communication, competence, partnership.

**AC3.1 Active participation:** a way of working that recognises an individual's right to participate in the activities and relationships of everyday life as independently as possible; the individual is regarded as an active partner in their own care or support, rather than a passive recipient

**AC4.1 Actions:** these actions constitute the learner's responsibilities in responding to disclosures or suspicions of abuse in line with internal policies and procedures. They include actions to take if the disclosure or suspicion implicates:

- a colleague
- someone in the individual's personal network
- the learner
- the learner's line manager
- others

#### LO5 Unsafe practices may include:

- poor working practices
- resource difficulties
- operational difficulties

**LO5.1 Wellbeing**: wellbeing is a broad concept referring to a person's quality of life taking into account health, happiness and comfort. It may include aspects of social, emotional, cultural, spiritual, intellectual, economic, physical and mental wellbeing.

| Unit aim (s)                            | The aim of this unit is to identify different types of abuse and encourage learners to |  |
|---|--|--|
|   | understand why abuse and neglect can   |  |
|   | happen. Learners will develop knowledge of   |  |
|   | how to safeguard adults, and an  |  |
|   | understanding of the action to take should   |  |
|   | abuse or neglect be suspected.   |  |
|   |  |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in   |  |
| a sector or regulatory body             | accordance with the Assessment   |  |
|   | Principles developed by Skills for Care  |  |
|   | and Development to complement  |  |
|   | Ofqual requirements.   |  |
|   |  |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit meets the specification  |  |
| and relevant national occupational      | published by Skills for Care in May  |  |
| standards                               | 2021.  |  |
|   |  |  |



| Title:  | K/650/1423 Mental capacity and restrictive practice   |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 3   |
| GLH:  | 22  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand the principles of mental capacity</li> <li>Understand the application of the</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain the main purpose and principles of relevant legislation and codes of practice including how these principles interact</li> <li>1.2 Describe factors that influence an individual's mental capacity and ability to express consent</li> <li>1.3 Explain the relationship between an individual's: <ul> <li>mental capacity</li> <li>consent</li> <li>choice</li> <li>safety</li> </ul> </li> <li>1.4 Explain what is meant by 'valid consent'</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the application of the<br/>principles of mental capacity and<br/>consent</li> </ol>     | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe own role and responsibilities in relation to relevant principles, legislation and codes of practice upholding individuals' rights</li> <li>2.2 Explain why it is important to establish an individual's consent when providing care and support</li> <li>2.3 Describe how personal values and attitudes can influence perceptions of situations of individuals' capacity</li> <li>2.4 Explain strategies and skills that could be used to maximise individuals' capacity to make their own decisions</li> <li>2.5 Define own role in identifying when an assessment of capacity may be required</li> <li>2.6 Explain the steps to take if consent cannot be readily established and own role in this</li> </ul> |



| 3. L | Inderstand restrictive practices | 3.1 | Explain what is meant by ` <b>restrictive</b><br><b>practice</b> '   |
|------|----------------------------------|-----|--|
|      |                                  | 3.2 | Explain the importance and impact of seeking the least restrictive option for individuals                                      |
|      |                                  | 3.3 | Describe how to raise concerns when<br>restrictions appear out of proportion<br>with evident risk                              |
|      |                                  | 3.4 | Identify organisation policies and<br>procedures in relation to restrictive<br>practices and own role in implementing<br>these |
|      |                                  |     |  |

**AC1.1 Principles:** This must include the 'best interest' principle.

AC1.1 Legislation and codes of practice: Including, but not limited to:

- Liberty Protection Safeguards
- Mental Capacity Act 2005
- Human Rights Act 1998
- Equality Act 2010
- Mental Health Act 1983
- Health and Social Care Act 2012
- Care Act 2014
- Data Protection Act 2018

**AC1.2 Factors:** including, but not limited to, fluctuating capacity and time and decision specificity, as well as environment, noise, time of day, coercive/controlling behaviour from others and so on.

**AC2.4 Strategies and skills:** these will include effective communication and engagement skills to provide practical support. This may include providing information in different formats, using communication aids, addressing environmental factors, listening, and recognising and responding appropriately to coercive behaviours.

**AC2.6 Steps to take:** these will include adhering to the principles of the Mental Capacity Act as well as adhering to organisations' policies and procedures and include best interest decisions.

**AC3.1 Restrictive practice:** learners should consider restrictions and restraint. They should consider practices intended to restrict and restrain individuals as well as practices that do so inadvertently. Learners should demonstrate awareness of physical, mechanical, chemical, seclusion, segregation, psychological restraint and the threat of restraint.

| Unit aim (s) | This unit has a focus on mental capacity and |  |  |
|--------------|--|--|--|
|              | consent and the role and application of      |  |  |
|              | restrictive practice.                        |  |  |



| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment<br>Principles developed by Skills for Care<br>and Development to complement<br>Ofqual requirements. |
|---|--|
| Details of the relationship of the unit                             | This unit meets the specification  |
| and relevant national occupational                                  | published by Skills for Care in May  |
| standards   | 2021.  |



| Title:  | L/650/1424 Duty of care  |  |
|---|--|--|
| Level:  | 3  |  |
| Credit Value:   | 2  |  |
| GLH:  | 21   |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |  |
| 1. Understand how duty of care<br>contributes to safe practice  | <ol> <li>1.1 Explain what it means to have a duty of care in own work role</li> <li>1.2 Explain how duty of care relates to duty of candour</li> <li>1.3 Explain how duty of care contributes to safeguarding <b>individuals</b> and to protecting their right to live in safety and be free from abuse and neglect</li> </ol>   |  |
| 2. Know how to address conflicts or<br>dilemmas that may arise between an<br>individual's rights and the duty of care | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe potential conflicts or dilemmas that may arise between the duty of care and an individual's rights</li> <li>2.2 Describe how to work with individuals and others to manage conflicts and dilemmas to achieve positive outcomes for individuals</li> <li>2.3 Explain where to get additional support and advice about conflicts and dilemmas</li> </ul> |  |
| 3. Know how to respond to concerns and complaints   | <ul> <li>3.1 Identify the main points of agreed procedures for handling comments and complaints</li> <li>3.2 Describe own role in listening and responding to comments and complaints</li> <li>3.3 Explain the importance of empowering individuals and <b>others</b> to express their comments and complaints</li> </ul>  |  |
| <ol> <li>Know how to recognise and respond to<br/>adverse events, incidents, errors and<br/>near misses</li> </ol>    | <ul> <li>4.1 Describe what is: <ul> <li>an adverse event</li> <li>an incident</li> <li>an error</li> <li>a near miss</li> </ul> </li> <li>4.2 Explain how to recognise, report and respond to:</li> </ul>  |  |



|  | <ul> <li>adverse events</li> <li>incidents</li> <li>errors</li> <li>near misses</li> <li>4.3 Explain how own role in recognising and responding to adverse events, incidents, errors and near misses can prevent further occurrences and improve quality of care</li> </ul> |
|--|---|
|--|---|

**AC1.3 Individual**: a person accessing care and support. The individual, or individuals, will normally refer to the person or people that the learner is providing care and support for.

**AC3.3 Others:** in this context, this refers to everyone a worker is likely to come in to contact with, including:

- individuals accessing care and support services
- carers, loved ones, family, friends of those accessing care and support services
- colleagues and peers
- managers and supervisors
- professionals from other services
- visitors to the work setting
- members of the community
- volunteers

| Unit aim (s)                            | This unit is aimed at those who are in a wide  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
|   | range of settings. The unit addresses how      |  |  |
|   | duty of care contributes to safe practice, and |  |  |
|   | how to address dilemmas or complaints that     |  |  |
|   | may arise where there is a duty of care.       |  |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in         |  |  |
| a sector or regulatory body             | accordance with the Assessment                 |  |  |
|   | Principles developed by Skills for Care        |  |  |
|   | and Development to complement                  |  |  |
|   | Ofqual requirements.                           |  |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit meets the specification              |  |  |
| and relevant national occupational      | published by Skills for Care in May            |  |  |
| standards                               | 2021.  |  |  |



| Title:   | M/650/1425 Promote effective communication in care settings   |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|
| Level:   | 3   |  |  |
| Credit Value:  | 3   |  |  |
| GLH:   | 24  |  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand why effective<br/>communication is important in the work<br/>setting</li> <li>Understand the variety of</li> </ol> | <ol> <li>1.1 Explain the reasons people<br/>communicate</li> <li>1.2 Describe how communication affects<br/>relationships</li> <li>1.3 Describe how communication skills can<br/>be used to manage <b>challenging</b><br/>situations</li> <li>1.4 Explain what is meant by Duty of<br/>Candour</li> <li>1.5 Explain the importance of maintaining<br/>open and honest communication</li> <li>2.1 Identify a range of <b>communication</b></li> </ol>  |  |  |
| communication needs and preferences  | <ul> <li>styles, methods and skills used in the care environment</li> <li>Identify barriers to effective communication</li> <li>Identify the factors to consider when promoting effective communication</li> <li>Describe how people may use and or interpret communication methods and styles in different ways</li> <li>Describe how digital and other technologies can be used to promote and enhance communication between self and others</li> <li>Explain how to access extra support or services to enable individuals to communicate effectively</li> <li>Describe the consequences of poor or inappropriate communication practices</li> </ul> |  |  |
| 3. Communicate effectively with <b>others</b>  | <ul> <li>3.1 Demonstrate effective communication methods and skills</li> <li>3.2 Apply communication skills appropriately in relation to the message and audience</li> <li>3.3 Use communication skills to build relationships</li> </ul>   |  |  |



|    |  | 3.4    | Explain how to overcome barriers to<br>communication              |
|----|--|--------|---|
| 4. | Meet the communication and language      | 4.1    | Establish the communication and                                   |
|    | needs, wishes and preferences of         |        | language <b>needs, wishes and</b>                                 |
|    | individuals                              |        | preferences of individuals in order to                            |
|    |  |        | maximise the quality of interaction                               |
|    |  | 4.2    | Demonstrate a range of communication                              |
|    |  |        | styles, methods and skills to meet the                            |
|    |  |        | needs of individuals  |
|    |  | 4.3    | Respond to an individual's reactions                              |
|    |  |        | when communicating  |
|    |  | 4.4    | Demonstrate professionalism when                                  |
|    |  |        | using a variety of communication                                  |
|    |  |        | methods   |
| 5. | Understand the role of independent       | 5.1    | Explain the purpose and principles of                             |
|    | advocacy services in supporting          |        | independent advocacy  |
|    | individuals to communicate their wishes, | 5.2    | Identify when to offer support to                                 |
|    | needs and preferences                    | 5.3    | individuals to access an advocate                                 |
|    |  | 5.5    | Explain how to support individuals to<br>access advocacy services |
| 6. | Understand confidentiality in care       | 6.1    | Define the meaning of the term                                    |
|    | settings                                 |        | `confidentiality'   |
|    | -  | 6.2    | Explain the importance of maintaining                             |
|    |  |        | confidentiality when communicating                                |
|    |  |        | with others   |
|    |  | 6.3    | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·                             |
|    |  | 6.4    | may need to be breached<br>Describe the potential tension between |
|    |  | 0.4    | maintaining an individual's                                       |
|    |  |        | confidentiality and disclosing concerns                           |
| Δd | litional information about this unit (a  | nnlifi |   |

**LO1 Work setting:** this may include one specific location or a range of locations depending on the context of the learners' role.

AC1.3 Challenging may include, but is not limited to:

- complex
- sensitive
- abusive
- difficult situations

AC2.1 Communication styles, methods and skills: learners should consider:

- verbal: words, voice, tone, pitch, spoken and written
- non-verbal: body language, proximity, eye contact, touch, gestures, behaviour
- additional methods to support communication: signs, symbols and pictures, objects of reference
- face to face communication (physically together or online), phone calls, email, letters, reports, text messages, the use of digital technology and technological aids, social networks, presentations



- active listening skills including paraphrasing, reflection, summarising, reframing, providing encouragement
- interpretation of non-verbal communication
- ability to use silence to provide space and support

AC2.2 Barriers: may include, but are not limited to:

- environment
- time
- own physical, emotional or psychological state
- physical, emotional or psychological state of others
- own skills, abilities or confidence
- own or others' prejudices
- conflict

#### AC2.7 Services: may include:

- translation services
- interpretation services
- speech and language services
- advocacy services

AC2.8 Poor or inappropriate: this may include, but is not limited to:

- patronising individuals
- not listening to individuals
- not making time to communicate effectively
- not respecting individuals' communication preferences, needs or strengths
- using communication skills to control or take ownership of an interaction
- interrupting or talking over someone
- offering inappropriate or unsolicited advice
- placating an individual

**LO3 Others:** in this context, this refers to everyone a worker is likely to come in to contact with, including:

- individuals accessing care and support services
- carers, loved ones, family, friends of those accessing care and support services
- colleagues and peers
- managers and supervisors
- professionals from other services
- visitors to the work setting
- members of the community
- volunteers

**LO4 Needs, wishes and preferences:** these may be based on experiences, desires, values, beliefs or culture and may change over time.

**Individual:** a person accessing care and support. The individual, or individuals, will normally refer to the person or people that the learner is providing care and support for.

| Unit aim (s) | This uni | t is aimed at those who work in care |
|--------------|----------|--------------------------------------|
|              | settings | . The unit is about the central      |
|              | importar | nce of communication in such         |
|              | settings | , and ways to overcome barriers to   |



|   | meet individual needs and preferences in communication. |
|---|---|
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Learning outcomes 3 and 4 must be                       |
| a sector or regulatory body             | assessed in a real work environment.                    |
|   | This qualification must be assessed in                  |
|   | accordance with the Assessment                          |
|   | Principles developed by Skills for Care                 |
|   | and Development to complement                           |
|   | Ofqual requirements.                                    |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit meets the specification                       |
| and relevant national occupational      | published by Skills for Care in May                     |
| standards                               | 2021.   |



| Title:  | R/650/1426 Handle information<br>effectively in care settings  |  |
|---|--|--|
| Level:  | 3  |  |
| Credit Value:   | 2  |  |
| GLH:  | 16   |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand requirements for handling<br/>information in care settings</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Identify the policies and codes of practice for handling information in care settings</li> <li>1.2 Summarise the legal requirements for handling information in care settings</li> <li>1.3 Describe features of manual and electronic information storage systems that help ensure <b>data and cyber</b> security</li> <li>1.4 Explain how to support others to keep information secure</li> <li>1.5 Explain what would be considered a 'data breach' in the handling of information, and how to respond</li> </ul> |  |
| 2. Implement good practice in handling information  | <ul> <li>2.1 Ensure data security when storing and accessing information</li> <li>2.2 Maintain and promote confidentiality in day-to-day communication</li> <li>2.3 Maintain records that are up to date, complete, accurate and legible</li> <li>2.4 Support audit processes in line with own role and responsibilities</li> </ul>  |  |

**AC1.3 Data and cyber security:** learners should consider features that ensure the confidentiality, availability and integrity of information. This should include reducing data breaches, securing devices, and safe use of email wherever relevant.

**AC1.4 Others:** in this context, this refers to everyone a worker is likely to come in to contact with, including:

- individuals accessing care and support services
- carers, loved ones, family, friends of those accessing care and support services
- colleagues and peers
- managers and supervisors
- professionals from other services
- visitors to the work setting



- members of the community
- volunteers

**AC1.5 Data breach:** this is the accidental or unlawful destruction, loss, alteration, unauthorised disclosure of, or access to, personal or secure data.

**AC2.1 Storing and accessing:** where learners are required to store and access information manually and electronically, their assessment must include both manual and electronic storage and access arrangements.

**AC2.3 Records:** where learners are required to use both electronic and manual recording systems, assessment must include both ways of record keeping.

**AC2.4 Audit processes:** this can include (amongst other tasks), where the learner supports compliance with information handling such as ensuring that paperwork is completed accurately and completely, checking that medication recording sheets are completed and that there are no discrepancies or gaps, checking that health and safety checks are recorded accurately.

| Unit aim (s)   | This unit develops the knowledge,<br>understanding and skills needed to<br>implement and promote good practice in<br>recording, sharing, storing and accessing<br>information in social care settings.   |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body                        | Learning outcome 2 must be assessed in a<br>real work environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment<br>Principles developed by Skills for Care<br>and Development to complement<br>Ofqual requirements. |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | This unit meets the specification<br>published by Skills for Care in May<br>2021.  |



| Title:   | T/650/1427 Person-centred practice  |
|--|---|
| Level:   | 3   |
| Credit Value:  | 3   |
| GLH:   | 20  |
| Learning Outcomes  | Assessment Criteria   |
| The learner will:  | The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the application of person-<br/>centred practices in care settings</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain how and why person-centred values and strength-based approaches influence all aspects of care work</li> <li>1.2 Describe how person-centred values can be applied in situations</li> <li>1.3 Explain how to effectively build relationships with individuals</li> <li>1.4 Explain what steps to take if consent cannot be readily established when providing care or support</li> <li>1.5 Evaluate the use of care plans and other resources to apply personcentred values and strength-based approaches</li> <li>1.6 Explain how the active participation of individuals and others in care planning promotes person-centred values and strength-based approaches</li> <li>1.7 Explain how to seek feedback to support the delivery of person-centred care in line with roles and responsibilities</li> <li>1.8 Describe how to support an individual to question or challenge decisions concerning them that are made by others</li> </ul> |
| 2. Work in a person-centred way  | <ul> <li>2.1 Work with an individual and others to establish and understand the individual's history, preferences, wishes, strengths and needs</li> <li>2.2 Establish consent when providing care or support</li> </ul>   |



|                                 | 2.3 Work with individuals to identify how  |
|---------------------------------|--|
|                                 | they want to participate in their care     |
|                                 | and support, taking into account their     |
|                                 | history, preferences, wishes,              |
|                                 | strengths and needs                        |
|                                 | 2.4 Respond to individuals' changing needs |
|                                 | or preferences and adapt actions and       |
|                                 | approaches accordingly                     |
|                                 | 2.5 Demonstrate respect for individuals'   |
|                                 | lifestyle, choices and relationships       |
|                                 | 2.6 Promote understanding and application  |
|                                 | of active participation amongst            |
|                                 | others                                     |
| 3. Understand the importance of | 3.1 Describe the different people and      |
| individuals' relationships      | relationships that may be important        |
|                                 | to individuals                             |
|                                 | 3.2 Evaluate the impact maintaining and    |
|                                 | building relationships can have for        |
|                                 | individuals                                |
|                                 | 3.3 Describe own role in supporting        |
|                                 | individuals to maintain and build          |
|                                 | relationships                              |
|                                 |  |

**A1.1 Person centred values:** including individuality, rights, choice, privacy, independence, dignity, respect, partnership.

**AC1.1, 1.5 Strength-based approaches:** also referred to as 'asset-based approaches'. This approach focuses on individuals' strengths, resources and what they are able to do themselves to keep well and maintain independence.

**AC1.5 Use of care plans:** a care plan may be known by other names e.g. support plan, individual plan. It is the document where day to day requirements and preferences for care and support are detailed. Learners should consider how they use care plans when providing person centred care, but importantly should consider how care plans are used to create and enable person centred care. They should consider how the individual's needs, wishes and preferences are included and reflected in the care plan. They should consider who should be involved in creating a care plan (the individual and those important to them, as well as professionals) and how the care plan is reviewed to ensure it continues to reflect the individual's aspirations.

**AC1.5 Other resources:** these might include, but are not limited to:

- one-page profiles
- advanced care plans
- assessments from other organisations
- information from other people important to the individual

**AC1.6 Individual:** a person accessing care and support. The individual, or individuals, will normally refer to the person or people that the learner is providing care and support for.



**AC1.6 Others:** others may include: Team members, other colleagues, those who use or commission their own health or social care services, families, carers and advocates.

AC1.6 Planning for their futures: This might include, but is not limited to:

- Living arrangements
- Health and wellbeing
- Relationships
- Education or employment
- End of life care

**AC2.1, 2.3 History, preferences, wishes, strengths and needs:** these may be based on experiences, desires, values, beliefs or culture and may change over time.

**AC2.6 Active participation:** a way of working that recognises an individual's right to participate in the activities and relationships of everyday life as independently as possible; the individual is regarded as an active partner in their own care or support, rather than a passive recipient.

**LO3 Relationships:** learners should consider the range of relationships important to individuals they are supporting. Consideration should go beyond immediate family and next of kin, and may include partners/spouses, extended family, friends, pets, neighbours, people in the community and other professionals. Learners should consider intimacy, sexuality and sexual relationships.

| Unit aim (s)                            | This unit is aimed at those working in a wide |
|---|---|
|   | range of care settings. The unit provides the |
|   | learner with the knowledge and skills         |
|   | required to implement and promote person-     |
|   | centred practice.                             |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Learning outcome 2 must be assessed           |
| a sector or regulatory body             | in a real work environment.                   |
|   | This qualification must be assessed in        |
|   | accordance with the Assessment                |
|   | Principles developed by Skills for Care       |
|   | and Development to complement                 |
|   | Ofqual requirements.                          |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit meets the specification             |
| and relevant national occupational      | published by Skills for Care in May           |
| standards                               | 2021.   |



| Title:  | Y/650/1428 Promote choice and   |
|---|---|
|   | independence in care settings   |
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 3   |
| GLH:  | 22  |
| Learning Outcomes   | Assessment Criteria   |
| The learner will:   | The learner can:  |
| 1. Promote <b>individuals'</b> rights to make choices   | <ul> <li>1.1 Support individuals to make informed choices and decisions</li> <li>1.2 Explain what is meant by informed consent</li> <li>1.3 Establish informed consent when providing care and support1.4 Use support mechanisms and guidance to support the individual's right to make choices</li> <li>1.5 Work with individuals to manage risk in a way that maintains and promotes the</li> </ul>   |
| 2. Promote individuals' independence  | individual's right to make choices<br>2.1 Identify <b>technologies</b> that can support   |
|   | or maintain individuals' independence<br>2.2 Involve individuals in their care and<br>support<br>2.3 Support individuals to recognise their<br>ability for self-care  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the role of risk assessments<br/>in promoting person-centred<br/>approaches, choice and independence</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain how risk assessments can be used to promote and enable: <ul> <li>individuals' choice,</li> <li>independence</li> <li>the right to take risks</li> </ul> </li> <li>3.2 Explain the different risk assessment methods that can be used in different situations including own role in these</li> <li>3.3 Explain the importance of reviewing and updating individuals' risk assessments</li> <li>3.4 Explain when individuals' risk assessments should be reviewed and updated</li> <li>3.5 Explain who should be involved in the review and updating of individuals' risk assessments</li> </ul> |



**LO1 Individual:** a person accessing care and support. The individual, or individuals, will normally refer to the person or people that the learner is providing care and support for.

**AC1.3 Informed consent:** where an individual, with capacity to consent, voluntarily agrees to an action or decision based on awareness and understanding of risks, benefits and alternatives.

AC2.1 Technologies: these might include assistive technology and/or digital technology.

**AC3.2 Risk assessment methods:** in line with organisational policies, procedures and practices. Examples may include initial assessments with a new client, risk assessments in line with reviews, multi-agency risk assessments, risk assessments for a new activity or a change in need.

| Unit aim (s)                            | This unit is aimed at those working in a wide   |
|---|---|
|   | range of care settings. It provides the learner |
|   | with the knowledge and skills required to       |
|   | effectively support individuals to make         |
|   | choices and gain independence.                  |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Assessment criteria 1.2, 1.4, 1.5, 1.6,         |
| a sector or regulatory body             | 2.2 and 2.3 need to be assessed in a            |
|   | real work environment.                          |
|   | This qualification must be assessed in          |
|   | accordance with the Assessment                  |
|   | Principles developed by Skills for Care         |
|   | and Development to complement                   |
|   | Ofqual requirements.                            |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit meets the specification               |
| and relevant national occupational      | published by Skills for Care in May             |
| standards                               | 2021.   |



| Title: |   | A/650/1429 Health and wellbeing in care settings  |  |
|--------|---|---|--|
| Level: |   | 3   |  |
| Cre    | dit Value:  | 3   |  |
| GLł    | 1:  | 23  |  |
| Lea    | rning Outcomes  | Assessment Criteria   |  |
| The    | e learner will:   | The learner can:  |  |
| 1.     | Understand the importance of <b>individuals' wellbeing</b>            | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain the impact the relationship between identity, self-image and self-esteem can have on an individual's wellbeing</li> <li>1.2. Describe <b>factors</b> that positively and negatively influence individuals'</li> </ul>  |  |
|        |   | <ul> <li>wellbeing</li> <li>1.3. Describe the services and resources available to support individuals' wellbeing and how to access these</li> <li>1.4 Explain how an individual's wellbeing may affect their behaviours and</li> </ul>  |  |
| 2.     | Know how to monitor individuals' health<br>and wellbeing              | <ul> <li>relationships</li> <li>2.1 Describe how to engage and involve individuals in monitoring their own health and wellbeing</li> <li>2.2 Describe the <b>early indicators</b> of physical and mental health deterioration</li> <li>2.3 Explain how to escalate concerns about an individual's health deterioration</li> </ul> |  |
| 3.     | Assess and respond to changes in an individual's health and wellbeing | <ul> <li>3.1 Engage and involve individuals in understanding and monitoring their health and wellbeing</li> <li>3.2 Use appropriate tools to monitor and report changes in health and wellbeing</li> <li>3.3 Record observations of health and wellbeing and take appropriate action</li> </ul>                                   |  |
| 4.     | Promote individuals' health and<br>wellbeing                          | <ul> <li>4.1 Support an individual in a way that promotes their sense of identity, self-image and self-esteem</li> <li>4.2 Contribute to maintaining an environment that promotes health and wellbeing</li> </ul>   |  |



| 4.3 | Implement a person-centred approach    |  |
|-----|--|--|
|     | to working with individuals and others |  |
|     | to improve individuals' health and     |  |
|     | wellbeing                              |  |

**LO1 Individuals' well-being:** in this context, well-being refers to that of people accessing care and support services. Well-being is broad concept referring to a person's quality of life. It takes into account health, happiness and comfort. It may include aspects of social, emotional, cultural, spiritual, intellectual, economic, physical and mental well-being.

**AC1.2 Factors:** factors affecting wellbeing will be different for different people. Learners should show consideration for environmental, physical, social and psychological factors.

**AC1.3 Services and resources:** learners should consider a range of services and resources available within their organisation and external to their organisation that could support individuals' different wellbeing, strengths and needs.

**AC2.2 Early indicators**: these may also be referred to as 'soft signs' of deterioration and include: Restlessness, confusion, temperature changes, changes in mobility, pain, discoloured skin, changes in appetite, breathing difficulties, changes to urine or bowel habits, sickness, changes in mood or temperament.

**AC3.2 Appropriate tools:** tools will vary depending on learner's role and organisational practices. They may include, but not limited to: 'Stop and Watch', RESTORE2, NEWS2, SBARD (Situation, Background, Assessment, Recommendation, Decision) as well as technological aids.

**AC3.3 Appropriate action:** actions will vary depending on learner's role and organisational practices, as well as the specific change in an individual's wellbeing. Action may include referring to a colleague or another organisation.

| Unit aim (s)                            | This unit is aimed at those working in a wide<br>range of care settings. It provides the learner<br>with the knowledge and skills required to<br>understand, assess, respond to and promote<br>an individual's health and well-being. |
|---|---|
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in  |
| a sector or regulatory body             | accordance with the Assessment  |
|   | Principles developed by Skills for Care   |
|   | and Development to complement   |
|   | Ofqual requirements.  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit meets the specification   |
| and relevant national occupational      | published by Skills for Care in May   |
| standards                               | 2021.   |



| Title:  | H/650/1430 Equality, diversity, inclusion and human rights  |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 3   |
| GLH:  | 25  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand influences on working<br/>practices to promote equality, diversity,<br/>inclusion and human rights</li> <li>Understand the importance of equality,<br/>diversity, inclusion and human rights<br/>within the care setting</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain how legislation, policies and codes of practice apply to and influences own work role</li> <li>1.2 Explain how external factors influence own work role</li> <li>2.1 Explain the definition of and relevance to own practice of: <ul> <li>Diversity</li> <li>Equality</li> <li>Inclusion</li> <li>Discrimination</li> <li>Unconscious bias</li> <li>Protected characteristics</li> <li>Human rights</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.2 Explain how inclusive practice and cultures promote equality, diversity, inclusion and human rights</li> <li>2.3 Describe how the promotion of equality, diversity, inclusion and human rights</li> <li>2.4 Describe how own organisation promotes equality, diversity, inclusion and human rights</li> <li>2.5 Explain own role in promoting equality, diversity inclusion and human rights</li> </ul> |
| 3. Know how to promote equality,<br>diversity, inclusion, and human rights  | <ul> <li>3.1 Describe the potential effects of discrimination</li> <li>3.2 Analyse how unconscious biases may affect own and others' behaviours</li> <li>3.3 Explain how to respond to and challenge discrimination in a way that promotes positive change</li> </ul>   |



|                             | 3.4 Describe how, and to whom any discriminatory or exclusive behaviours should be reported   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 4. Work in an inclusive way | <ul> <li>4.1 Interact with individuals and others in a way that respects their lifestyle, beliefs, culture, values and preferences</li> <li>4.2 Promote a culture that supports inclusive practices</li> <li>4.3 Reflect on and make improvements to own practice in promoting equality, diversity, inclusion and human rights</li> </ul> |

**AC1.1 Legislation:** these must relate to equality, diversity, inclusion, discrimination and human rights and might include: Equality Act 2010, Human Right Act 1998, Health and Social Care Act 2012, Care Act 2014.

**AC1.2 External factors:** these may include, but are not limited to, societal movements and campaigns or periods in modern history.

**AC2.3 Individuals:** a person accessing care and support. The individual, or individuals, will normally refer to the person or people that the learner is providing care and support for.

AC2.5 Own role in promoting: this may include the learner's role:

- within their team, workplace or organisation
- within networks of practice
- within the community
- supporting or advising other professionals with regards to reasonable adjustments for individuals

**AC3.1 Effects:** these may include effects on the individual, their loved ones, those who inflict discrimination and the wider community and society.

**AC3.2 Others:** in this context, this refers to everyone a worker is likely to come in to contact with, including:

- individuals accessing care and support services
- carers, loved ones, family, friends of those accessing care and support services
- colleagues and peers
- managers and supervisors
- professionals from other services
- visitors to the work setting
- members of the community
- Volunteers

| Unit aim (s) | This unit is aimed at those who work in in a   |
|--------------|--|
|              | wide range of care settings. The unit covers   |
|              | the concepts of equality, diversity, inclusion |
|              | and human rights which are fundamental to      |
|              | all roles.                                     |



| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body | Assessment criteria 4.1 and 4.2 must be<br>assessed in a real work environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment<br>Principles developed by Skills for Care<br>and Development to complement<br>Ofqual requirements. |
|---|---|
| Details of the relationship of the unit                             | This unit meets the specification   |
| and relevant national occupational                                  | published by Skills for Care in May   |
| standards   | 2021.   |



| Title:  | J/650/1431 Health and safety in care settings   |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 5   |
| GLH:  | 39  |
| Learning Outcomes   | Assessment Criteria   |
| The learner will:   | The learner can:  |
| 1. Understand own responsibilities, and the responsibilities of others, relating to health and safety | <ol> <li>Identify legislation relating to health<br/>and safety in a care work setting</li> <li>Explain the health and safety policies<br/>and procedures agreed with the<br/>employer</li> </ol>   |
|   | <ul> <li>1.3 Describe the main health and safety responsibilities of: <ul> <li>self</li> <li>the employer or manager</li> <li>others in the work setting</li> </ul> </li> <li>1.4 Describe tasks in the work setting that should not be carried out without special training</li> </ul> |
| 2. Understand procedures for responding   | 2.1 Describe different types of accidents   |
| to accidents and sudden illness   | and sudden illnesses that may occur in  |
|   | own work setting<br>2.2 Explain procedures to be followed if an<br>accident or sudden illness occurs  |
| 3. Carry out own responsibilities for health and safety   | 3.1 Use policies and procedures or other<br>agreed ways of working that relate to<br>health and safety  |
|   | 3.2 Support others to understand and follow safe practices  |
|   | <ul><li>3.3 Monitor potential health and safety risks</li><li>3.4 Use risk assessment in relation to health</li></ul>   |
|   | and safety  |
|   | 3.5 Minimise and manage potential risks   |
|   | and hazards<br>3.6 Access additional support or information<br>relating to health and safety  |
| 4. Understand how to prevent and control the spread of infection                                      | 4.1 Explain the different types of infection<br>and how infections are spread, including<br>the <b>chain of infection</b>   |
|   | <ul> <li>4.2 Describe how to identify individuals who have, or are at risk of developing, an infection, and the actions to take to reduce the risks to them, and others</li> </ul>  |





| 9.2 Demonstrate and use agreed           |
|--|
| procedures for checking the identity of  |
| anyone requesting access to:             |
| <ul> <li>premises</li> </ul>             |
| <ul> <li>information</li> </ul>          |
| 9.3 Use measures to protect own security |
| and the security of others in the work   |
| setting                                  |
|  |
|  |

**AC1.1, 1.3 Work setting**: this may include one specific location or a range of locations, depending on the content of a particular work role.

**AC1.2 Policies and procedures**: this may include other agreed ways of working as well as formal policies and procedures.

**AC1.3, 5.4 Others:** in this context, this refers to everyone a worker is likely to come in to contact with, including:

- individuals accessing care and support services
- carers, loved ones, family, friends of those accessing care and support services
- colleagues and peers
- managers and supervisors
- professionals from other services
- visitors to the work setting
- members of the community
- volunteers

AC1.4 Tasks: these may include:

- use of equipment
- first aid
- medication
- health care procedures
- food handling and preparation

**AC4.1 Chain of infection**: Disease Organism (agent) - Reservoir - Mode of escape - Mode of transfer - Mode of entry - Susceptible host.

**AC4.2 Individuals:** people accessing care and support. The individual, or individuals, will normally refer to the person or people that the learner is providing care and support for.

**AC4.5 Decontamination:** after cleaning, environments and equipment may require disinfection and sterilisation.

**AC5.1 Appropriate use of Personal Protective Equipment (PPE):** this should include the different equipment available and putting on/taking off and disposal.

**AC5.2, 5.3 Hand hygiene:** refers to following recommended hand-washing techniques and the use of appropriate sanitiser.



| Unit aim (s)                            | This unit is aimed at those working in a wide |
|---|---|
|   | range of care settings. It provides the       |
|   | learner with the knowledge and skills         |
|   | required to promote and implement health,     |
|   | safety and wellbeing in the work setting.     |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Assessment criteria 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4,       |
| a sector or regulatory body             | 3.5, 3.6, 5.1, 5.3, 5.4, 6.3, 7.2, 8.3,       |
|   | 8.4, 9.2, 9.3 must be assessed in a real      |
|   | work environment.                             |
|   | This qualification must be assessed in        |
|   | accordance with the Assessment                |
|   | Principles developed by Skills for Care       |
|   | and Development to complement                 |
|   | Ofqual requirements.                          |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit meets the specification             |
| and relevant national occupational      | published by Skills for Care in May           |
| standards                               | 2021.   |



| Title:   | K/650/1432 Promote continuous<br>personal development in care settings  |
|--|---|
| Level:   | 3   |
| Credit Value:  | 3   |
| GLH:   | 25  |
| Learning Outcomes  | Assessment Criteria   |
| The learner will:  | The learner can:  |
| 1. Understand competence required in own role                              | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe the duties and responsibilities of own work role</li> <li>1.2 Describe the expectations of own work role as expressed in relevant standards</li> </ul>  |
|  | <ul> <li>1.3 Explain the relationship between continuing professional development and the provision of quality care</li> <li>1.4 Identify sources of support for planning and reviewing own</li> </ul>  |
|  | development   |
| 2. Demonstrate commitment to own development                               | <ul> <li>2.1 Assess own knowledge, performance<br/>and understanding against relevant<br/>standards</li> <li>2.2 Work with <b>others</b> to identify and<br/>prioritise own learning needs,<br/>professional interests and development<br/>aspirations</li> </ul> |
|  | <ul> <li>2.3 Work with others to agree own personal and professional development plan</li> <li>2.4 Work with others to achieve and review personal and professional</li> </ul>  |
|  | <ul> <li>development plan</li> <li>2.5 Record progress in relation to personal<br/>and professional development</li> </ul>  |
| 3. Understand the value of reflective practice                             | <ul> <li>3.1 Describe the benefits and scope of reflective practice</li> <li>3.2 Explain the importance of reflective practice in supporting continuous improvements to own practice and provision of quality care</li> </ul>                                     |
| <ol> <li>Use reflective practice to improve ways<br/>of working</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>4.1 Reflect on how learning activities<br/>have affected practice</li> <li>4.2 Reflect on how own values, beliefs and<br/>experiences may affect working<br/>practices</li> </ul>  |



|                                  | <ul> <li>4.3 Reflect on own ability to use initiative,<br/>make decisions and take responsibility<br/>for own actions</li> <li>4.4 Use reflections and feedback from<br/>others to evaluate own performance<br/>and inform development</li> </ul> |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 5. Develop leadership behaviours | <ul> <li>5.1 Model high standards of practice to encourage others to make a positive difference</li> <li>5.2 Share ideas with others for improving services</li> <li>5.3 Promote partnership approaches for supporting individuals</li> </ul>     |

**AC1.1 Duties and responsibilities:** learners should discuss their duties and responsibilities in the context of providing person centred care and support in line with their job descriptions.

**AC1.2 Standards:** may include Codes of Practice, regulations, minimum standards, national occupational standards.

**AC1.3 Continuing professional development:** refers to the process of monitoring and documenting the skills, knowledge and experience gained both formally and informally, beyond initial training.

## AC1.4 Sources of support: may include:

- formal or informal support
- supervision
- appraisal
- mentoring
- peer support
- within and outside the organisation

**AC2.2 Others:** in this context, this will likely refer to line-manager, assessor and/or supervisor. It could also include:

- individuals accessing care and support services
- carers, loved ones, family, friends of those accessing care and support services
- colleagues and peers
- professionals from other services

**AC2.4 Personal and professional development plan:** may be known by different names, but will record information such as agreed objectives for personal and professional development, proposed activities to meet objectives, timescales for review

**AC3.1 Scope:** learners should recognise that it is also important to reflect on the practice or behaviours of others as well as reflect on events, activities and situations in order to gain insight and understanding.



| <b>AC4.1 Learning activities:</b> evaluation must cover a range of learning activities and must include reference to online learning e.g. e-learning, virtual classrooms, online tutorials, webinars, internet research as well as face to face methods (where learner has access). |   |
|---|---|
| Unit aim (s)  | This unit covers continuous professional      |
|   | development in care settings using reflective |
|   | practice and personal development plans to    |
|   | map and review a path for progression.        |
| Assessment requirements specified by  | Learning outcomes 2, 4 and 5 need to          |
| a sector or regulatory body   | be assessed in a real work                    |
|   | environment.                                  |
|   |   |
|   | This qualification must be assessed in        |
|   | accordance with the Assessment                |
|   | Principles developed by Skills for Care       |
|   | and Development to complement                 |
|   | Ofqual requirements.                          |
| Details of the relationship of the unit   | This unit meets the specification             |
| and relevant national occupational  | published by Skills for Care in May           |
| standards   | 2021.   |



| Title:                                    | L/650/1433 Manage personal wellbeing                               |
|---|--|
| Level:                                    | 3  |
| Credit Value:                             | 3  |
| GLH:                                      | 20   |
| Learning Outcomes                         | Assessment Criteria  |
| The learner will:                         | The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand the meaning of personal     | 1.1 Define:  |
| wellbeing                                 | personal wellbeing   |
|   | <ul> <li>self-care</li> </ul>                                      |
|   | resilience   |
|   | 1.2 Describe <b>indicators</b> of personal                         |
|   | wellbeing and wellbeing deterioration                              |
|   | 1.3 Analyse positive and negative <b>factors</b>                   |
|   | that influence personal wellbeing                                  |
| 2. Understand the importance of           | 2.1 Analyse how personal wellbeing impacts                         |
| maintaining and improving personal        | on own role, behaviour and on <b>others</b>                        |
| wellbeing                                 | 2.2 Evaluate the importance of maintaining personal wellbeing      |
| 3. Know how to maintain and improve       | 3.1 Identify a range of personal wellbeing                         |
| personal wellbeing                        | support offers available   |
| 1 5                                       | 3.2 Describe how to access <b>support offers</b>                   |
|   | 3.3. Explain how to access professional help                       |
|   | 3.4 Analyse <b>strategies</b> to maintain and                      |
|   | improve personal wellbeing   |
| 4. Know how to manage own stress and      | 4.1 Define the terms:  |
| anxiety                                   | • stress   |
|   | anxiety  |
|   | 4.2 Describe how own stress and anxiety                            |
|   | affect reactions and behaviours towards                            |
|   | others   |
|   | 4.3 Describe <b>factors</b> and <b>indicators</b> of               |
|   | own stress and anxiety   |
|   | 4.4 Evaluate <b>strategies</b> for managing own stress and anxiety |
| Additional information about this unit (a | mulification for according to ritoria)                             |

**Personal wellbeing:** In this context, wellbeing refers to that of the learner. Wellbeing is a broad concept referring to a person's quality of life taking into account health, happiness and



comfort. It may include aspects of social, emotional, cultural, spiritual, intellectual, economic, physical and mental wellbeing.

**A1.3, AC4.3 Factors:** These should be specific to the learner. The learner should show consideration of environmental, physical, social and psychological factors **inside and outside the workplace**.

**AC1.2, AC4.3 Indicators:** These should be specific to the learner. The learner should show consideration of physical, emotional and psychological indicators.

**AC2.1 Others:** May include team members, other colleagues, individuals accessing care and support services, families, carers and other professionals. Learners may also wish to consider their personal relationships.

**AC3.4, AC4.4 Strategies:** These should be specific to the learner. Strategies should include those that enable the learner to maintain their wellbeing as well as strategies to implement if indicators of deterioration are recognised.

**AC3.1, AC3.2 Support offers**: The range should include offers available inside and outside the learners' workplace. Learners should consider offers they use as well as those they currently choose not to. For example:

- Internal: Supervision, employee assistance scheme, mentor or buddying systems
- External: self-help tools, apps and websites, local groups and networks

**LO4 Stress:** Stress can have positive, as well as negative, effects on a person. In this context, we refer to the negative impacts of stress.

| Unit aim (s)   | This unit provides the learner with the<br>knowledge and understanding required to<br>promote their own wellbeing, including the<br>ability to monitor and manage their own<br>stress. |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body                           | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment<br>Principles developed by Skills for Care<br>and Development to complement<br>Ofqual requirements.           |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | This unit meets the specification<br>published by Skills for Care in May<br>2021.  |



# **Optional Units**

| Title:                                  | R/616/6150 Leadership and<br>management fundamentals  |
|---|---|
| Level:                                  | 3   |
| Credit Value:                           | 3   |
| GLH:                                    | 12  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand the role of a leader      | <ul><li>1.1 Define the term 'leadership'</li><li>1.2 Explain the requirements for effective leadership</li><li>1.3 Suggest ways to lead effectively</li></ul>   |
| 2. Know why organisations have managers | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe what is meant by the term management</li> <li>2.2 Explain the functions of management</li> <li>2.3 Describe different roles of a manager</li> <li>2.4 Identify the differences between leadership and management</li> </ul> |
| 3. Apply leadership in context          | <ul> <li>3.1 Select appropriate leadership styles and behaviours</li> <li>3.2 Demonstrate leadership in different situations</li> <li>3.3 Reflect on own performance as a leader</li> </ul>   |
| 4. Demonstrate functions of a manager   | 4.1 Apply suitable management functions   |

# Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)

# Learning Outcome 1

Learners will need to develop a basic understanding of:

- leadership styles
- leadership roles
- leadership behaviours

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous work settings to demonstrate their understanding of the function and role of a leader in adult care settings. Leadership styles include:

- Autocratic
- Authoritative



- Democratic
- Coaching
- Affiliative
- Laissez-faire

Leadership roles in adult care include that of leader of the service, mentor, role model, trainer, supervisor, managing teams, liaison with other carers, families, practitioners and specialists, resource management and care planning, assessment and review.

Leadership behaviours include encouraging innovation, grounded ethics, managing with compassion, adaptability, motivation, a coaching mindset, effective communication and promoting an inspiring vision for the adult care service.

# Learning Outcome 2

Learners can use examples from their current or previous work settings to explore the reasons why adult care service need managers. Reasons will include: to be compliant with registration requirements, overseeing service delivery, ensuring all service requirements are met, motivating staff, recruitment and selection, budget management and overseeing the inspection process.

Learners will need to develop a basic understanding of:

- management functions such as planning, organising, co-ordinating, commanding and controlling (Fayol)
- theorists such as Mintzberg
- key differences leaders have 'willing followers' whereas managers can use their authority to gain compliance.

# **Learning Outcome 3**

Learners can use examples from their current or previous work settings to ensure the application of their chosen leadership style and related behaviours. This will need to be demonstrated in different situations which take place in the setting. These situations could include supporting a team, facilitating review meetings or preparing a new aspect of the service.

Learners will engage in real or scenario-based situations in their adult care setting, where they use their knowledge to:

- effectively lead individuals and teams
- be an open and honest leader
- lead by example
- apply theory such as Ashridge studies

# **Learning Outcome 4**

By understanding management functions learners will be able to plan, control, organise and co-ordinate resources. Learners can use examples from their current or previous work



| settings to demonstrate their application of management functions relevant to the given situation. For example, managing a team, arranging staff cover, overseeing staff development or facilitating change for the service. |  |
|--|--|
| Unit aim (s)   | This unit introduces learners to the concepts<br>of leadership and management. Learners<br>will develop a fundamental awareness and<br>understanding of leadership as a role and<br>management as a function. Key to nurturing<br>this understanding will be through effectively<br>operating as a leader and as a manager in<br>different situations. |
|  | The aim of this unit is, therefore, to establish<br>in the mind of learners the essential<br>knowledge required to perform as a leader<br>and as a manager where the practical<br>application of knowledge is a key aspect of<br>the unit.   |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)  | This unit is assessed through portfolio of evidence.   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant National Occupational<br>Standards   | The following standards from the NOS for<br>Management and Leadership have been<br>mapped to this unit:<br>Concern for Others<br>Focus on Results<br>Persuasiveness  |



| Title:                                    | D/616/6152 Leading effective teams   |
|---|--|
| Level:                                    | 3  |
| Credit Value:                             | 2  |
| GLH:                                      | 6  |
| Learning Outcomes                         | Assessment Criteria  |
| The learner will:                         | The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand the concept of teams        | <ol> <li>1.1 Describe different types of teams</li> <li>1.2 Describe different roles within a team</li> <li>1.3 Explain how teams are established</li> </ol>   |
| 1. Understand team dynamics               | <ol> <li>1.1 Describe what is meant by the term<br/>team dynamics</li> <li>1.2 Describe barriers to establishing positive<br/>team dynamics</li> <li>1.3 Explain why positive dynamics are<br/>important to a leader and a team</li> </ol> |
| 2. Develop positive team dynamics         | <ul><li>2.1 Identify the impact of individuals on team dynamics</li><li>2.2 Apply leadership models to enhance team dynamics</li></ul>   |
| 3. Be able to develop trust within a team | <ul><li>3.1 Determine the level of trust within a team</li><li>3.2 Implement plans and/or activities to increase trust within a team</li></ul>   |

# Learning Outcome 1

Within Health and Social Care, it is usual to work in a multi-disciplinary team environment. The learner could look at the teams that they work with and explain the differences in the services that they provide, their relationship with different teams and the differences in the structures of the teams, before analysing their own team. Relevant models include:

- The Hackman Model
- Belbin's Theory
- Maslow's Theory
- John Adair's Leadership Theory



• Tuckman's model is especially pertinent for AC1.3

This is a knowledge-based outcome and should set the fundamental knowledge base for the rest of the unit.

# Learning Outcome 2

Again Tuckman's theory will support the learner to achieve this learning outcome, and identify the dynamics in their own team.

Barriers could include:

- Changes to expectations/conditions
- Changes in the team members/roles
- Emotional needs not being supported
- Disruptive team members
- Team members not completing their responsibilities
- Expectations/ responsibilities not being clear
- Conflicts

Martin Seligman's PERMA model amongst others will also support the learner to complete this outcome.

The learner should relate the knowledge to their own teams and use examples of their own experiences to evidence their understanding.

# Learning Outcome 3

This outcome challenges the learner to look outside of the box and away from just managing the day to day running, but looking at why people react in the way that they do and how to support the team members with the dynamics that develop in a team. Leadership models could include:

- The Lewin Theory of Behavioural Leadership
- Hersey and Blanchard Situational Leadership Theory
- James MacGregor Burns Transformational Leadership Theory

The assessor needs to observe AC3.2 in a real work environment.

# **Learning Outcome 4**

Ken Blanchard's ABCD Trust Model could support the learner with this learning outcome. The learner could consider concepts such as:

- Team building activities
- The psychology of teams
- Interpersonal behaviour

This learning outcome needs to come from real work activities which could include a team building exercise.

| Unit aim (s) | Through this unit learners will begin to gain<br>an understanding of teams and how<br>important they are to a leader so that<br>performance is both effective and efficient. |
|--------------|--|
|              | Learners will engage with some fundamental<br>team related concepts which will enable  |
|              | them to recognise key characteristics of   |



|  | individuals within a team and their likely<br>impact on team dynamics and trust within a<br>team.   |
|--|---|
|  | The aim of this unit is, therefore, to enable<br>learners to develop and maintain an effective<br>team where an understanding of individual<br>behaviours is a key consideration. |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | This unit is assessed through portfolio of evidence.  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant National Occupational<br>Standards | The following standards from the NOS for<br>Management and Leadership have been<br>mapped to this unit:<br>Concern for Others<br>Focus on Results<br>Persuasiveness               |



| Title:   | R/616/5306 Understand the process and experience of dementia   |
|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |
| Credit Value:  | 3  |
| GLH:   | 22   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1. Understand the neurology of dementia  | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe a range of causes of dementia syndrome</li> <li>1.2 Describe the types of memory impairment commonly experienced by individuals with dementia</li> <li>1.3 Explain how individuals with dementia process information</li> <li>1.4 Explain how other factors can cause changes in an individual's condition that may not be attributable to dementia</li> <li>1.5 Explain why the abilities and needs of an individual with dementia may fluctuate</li> </ul>   |
| 2. Understand the impact of recognition<br>and diagnosis of dementia                   | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe the impact of early diagnosis<br/>and follow up to diagnosis</li> <li>2.2 Explain the importance of recording<br/>possible signs or symptoms of dementia<br/>in an individual in line with agreed ways<br/>of working</li> <li>2.3 Explain the process of reporting possible<br/>signs of dementia within agreed ways of<br/>working</li> <li>2.4 Describe the possible impact of<br/>receiving a diagnosis of dementia on: <ul> <li>the individual</li> <li>their family and friends</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| 3. Understand how dementia care must be<br>underpinned by a person-centred<br>approach | <ul> <li>3.1 Compare a person-centred and a non-centred approach to dementia care</li> <li>3.2 Describe a range of different techniques that can be used to meet the fluctuating abilities and needs of the individual with dementia</li> </ul>  |



| 3.3 | Describe how myths and stereotypes |
|-----|------------------------------------|
|     | related to dementia may affect the |
|     | individual and their carers        |
| 24  | <b>D</b> 11 <b>1 1 1 1 1 1</b>     |

3.4 Describe ways in which individuals and carers can be supported to overcome their fears

# Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)

## Dementia syndrome:

- Dementia caused by a combination of conditions, sometimes called a mixed dementia
- A set of signs and symptoms, not a single disease

#### Dementia

Types of dementia include:

- Alzheimer's disease
- Parkinson's disease
- Lewy body dementia
- Vascular dementia
- Frontotemporal dementia
- Mixed dementia
- Alcohol related brain damage
- Huntington's disease

An individual is someone requiring care or support

#### Carers e.g.

- Partner
- Family
- Friends
- Neighbours

| Unit aim(s)  | This unit provides the knowledge of the<br>neurology of dementia to support the<br>understanding of how individuals may<br>experience dementia.                              |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards |  |



| Title:  | H/650/0865 Understand the role of<br>communication and interactions with<br>individuals who have dementia   |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 4   |
| Calculated GLH:   | 22  |
| Learning Outcomes   | Assessment Criteria   |
| The learner will:   | The learner can:  |
| 1. Understand that individuals with dementia may communicate in different ways                                | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain how individuals may communicate through their behaviour</li> <li>1.2 Give examples of how carers and others may misinterpret communication</li> <li>1.3 Explain the importance of effective</li> </ul>   |
|   | communication<br>1.4 Describe how different forms of<br>dementia may affect the way an<br>individual communicates   |
| <ol> <li>Understand the importance of positive<br/>interactions with individuals with<br/>dementia</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Give examples of both positive and negative interactions with individuals</li> <li>2.2 Explain how positive interactions with individuals who have dementia can contribute to their wellbeing</li> <li>2.2 Explain the immediate of immediate</li> </ul>   |
|   | <ul> <li>2.3 Explain the importance of involving individuals with dementia in a range of activities</li> <li>2.4 Compare a reality orientation approach to interactions with a validation therapy approach</li> </ul>   |
| 3. Understand the factors which can affect interactions and communication of individuals with dementia        | <ul> <li>3.1 Identify both the physical and the mental health needs that may need to be considered when communicating with an individual with dementia</li> <li>3.2 Describe how the sensory impairment of an individual with dementia may affect their communication skills</li> <li>3.3 Describe how the environment might</li> </ul> |
|   | affect an individual<br>3.4 Describe how the behaviour of carers or<br>others might affect the wellbeing of an<br>individual  |



3.5 Explain how the use of language can hinder positive interactions and communication

# Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)

## Others eg.

- Care worker
- Colleague
- Manager
- Social Worker
- Occupational Therapist
- GP
- Speech & Language Therapist
- Physiotherapist
- Pharmacist
- Nurse
- Psychologist
- Admiral Nurses
- Independent Mental Capacity Advocate
- Community Psychiatric Nurse
- Dementia Care Advisors
- Advocate
- Support groups

## Carers e.g.

- Partner
- Family
- Friends
- Neighbours

## Well being

- Sense of hope
- Sense of agency
- Confidence
- Self esteem
- Physical health

## Wellbeing indicators:

- Can communicate wants, needs and choices
- Makes contact with other people
- Shows warmth and affection
- Showing pleasure or enjoyment
- Alertness, responsiveness
- Uses remaining abilities
- Expresses self creatively



- Is co-operative or helpful
- Responding appropriately to people
- Expresses appropriate emotions
- Relaxed posture or body language
- Sense of humour
- Sense of purpose
- Signs of self-respect

# **Reality Orientation**

This approach tries to place the individual in the here and now, reminding them of the day, place, time and situation they are in

## Validation Therapy Approach

Using non-judgmental acceptance and empathy to show the individual that their expressed feelings are valid. Focussing on the feelings rather than the content of speech.

| Unit aim(s)  | This unit provides the underpinning<br>knowledge required to develop therapeutic<br>relationships with individuals with dementia<br>based on interactions and communication. |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | HSC 21, 31, 41, 24, 35 45  |



| Title: |   | Y/618/5136 Enable rights and choices of individuals with dementia  |
|--------|---|--|
| Level: |   | 3  |
| Cre    | dit Value:  | 5  |
| GLł    | 1:  | 29   |
|        | e learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1.     | Understand legislation and agreed ways<br>of working with individuals with<br>dementia                                      | <ol> <li>1.1 Identify legislation that relates to the rights and choices of individuals with dementia</li> <li>1.2 Explain agreed ways of working that relate to rights and choices of an individual with dementia</li> </ol>  |
| 2.     | Support the rights and choices of individuals with dementia   | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain how to support an individual with dementia to exercise their rights in the planning and delivery of their care</li> <li>2.2 Demonstrate how to gain consent from an individual with dementia</li> <li>2.3 Support an individual with dementia when planning and delivering care: <ul> <li>according to their best interests</li> <li>to promote their rights and choices</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.4 Demonstrate ways to adjust the physical environment to support individuals with dementia</li> <li>2.5 Explain how social aspects of an environment can support individuals with dementia</li> </ul> |
| 3.     | Involve carers and others in supporting<br>individuals with dementia  | <ul> <li>3.1 Work with carers and others in planning support that is in the best interest of an individual with dementia</li> <li>3.2 Explain how conflicts of interest can be addressed when working with individuals with dementia</li> </ul>  |
| 4.     | Be able to maintain the privacy, dignity<br>and respect of individuals with dementia<br>whilst promoting rights and choices | <ul> <li>4.1 Show how to implement a care plan<br/>whilst promoting an individual's rights<br/>and choices</li> <li>4.2 Provide support to an individual with<br/>dementia whilst respecting their privacy<br/>and dignity</li> </ul>  |



| <b>Additional information about this unit (ar</b> N/A                                      | <ul><li>4.3 Explain how to support individuals with dementia to comment or complain on the care that they receive</li><li>mplification for assessment criteria)</li></ul>   |
|--|---|
| Unit aim(s)  | This unit is about the learner's knowledge,<br>understanding and skills for supporting the<br>rights and choices of an individual with<br>dementia  |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | Assessment criteria 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 3.1, 4.1,<br>4.2 must be assessed in a real work<br>environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards |   |



| Title:   | K/618/5044 End of life and dementia care  |  |
|--|---|--|
| Level:   | 3   |  |
| Credit Value:  | 3   |  |
| GLH:   | 20  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| 1. Understand the provision of end of life care for individuals with dementia  | <ul> <li>1.1 Outline ways in which dementia can be a terminal illness</li> <li>1.2 Compare the differences in the end of life experience of an <b>individual</b> with dementia to that of an individual without dementia</li> <li>1.3 Explain why it is important that end of life care for an individual with dementia must be person-centred</li> <li>1.4 Explain why individuals with dementia need to be supported to make advance care plans as early as possible</li> </ul> |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand how to support individuals<br/>with dementia affected by pain and<br/>distress at end of life</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain why pain in individuals with dementia is often poorly recognised and undertreated</li> <li>2.2 Describe ways to assess whether an individual with dementia is in pain or distress</li> <li>2.3 Describe ways to support individuals with dementia to manage their pain and distress at end of life using: <ul> <li>medication</li> <li>non-medication techniques</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand how to support carers of<br/>individuals with dementia at end of life</li> </ol>                         | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain why carers may experience guilt and stress at the end of life of an individual with dementia</li> <li>3.2 Describe ways of supporting carers to understand how the end of life process may differ for individuals with dementia</li> <li>3.3 Describe how others caring for individuals with dementia may experience loss and grief</li> <li>3.4 Describe ways of supporting carers when difficult decisions need to be</li> </ul>                           |  |



made for individuals with dementia at end of life

3.5 Explain how to support carers and others to care for an individual with dementia in the final stages of their life

#### Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)

**Individual** is the person receiving support or care in the work setting.

**Carer** is the unpaid carer, often a relative or friend.

**Others** may include:

- Partner
- Family
- Friends
- Neighbours
- Care Worker
- Colleague
- Manager
- Other professionals

**Difficult decisions** may include the carers, families, friends and others making some decision on behalf of the individual with dementia. It may mean that where an advanced decision to refuse treatment does not exist, or there is no one appointed to make such decisions, then a collective decision must be made using the best interest framework of the Mental Capacity Act 2005.

| Unit aim(s)                             | This unit provides the learner with the          |
|---|--|
|   | knowledge and understanding of how end of        |
|   | life care can be different with individuals with |
|   | dementia and how to support the individual       |
|   | and their carers through end of life care.       |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in           |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | accordance with the Assessment Principles        |
| appropriate)                            | developed by Skills for Care and                 |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual                 |
|   | requirements.                                    |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | N/A  |
| and relevant national occupational      |  |
| standards                               |  |



| Title:  | L/618/5148 Equality, diversity and inclusion in dementia care practice  |  |
|---|---|--|
| Level:  | 3   |  |
| Credit Value:   | 4   |  |
| GLH:  | 31  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the importance of equality,<br/>diversity and inclusion in dementia care and<br/>support</li> </ol> | <ol> <li>1.1 Explain how legislation, government policy<br/>and agreed ways of working support<br/>inclusive practice for dementia care and<br/>support</li> <li>1.2 Describe ways in which an individual with<br/>dementia may experience discrimination</li> <li>1.3 Explain the effects of discrimination on an<br/>individual with dementia</li> </ol>  |  |
| 2. Understand that each individual's experience of dementia is unique   | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain why it is important to recognise and respect the <b>diversity</b> of individuals</li> <li>2.2 Explain the differences in the experience of dementia for an individual who has acquired it as an older person with the experience of an individual who has acquired it as a younger person</li> <li>2.3 Describe how the experience of dementia may be different for individuals <ul> <li>who have a learning disability</li> <li>who are from different cultural backgrounds</li> <li>who are at the end of life</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.4 Explain how an individual's dementia can impact on carers and <b>others</b></li> </ul> |  |
| 3. Be able to work in a person-centred way with individuals with dementia   | <ul><li>3.1 Use a person-centred approach when working with an individual with dementia</li><li>3.2 Ensure the inclusion of an individual with dementia using a person-centred approach</li></ul>   |  |
| <ol> <li>Be able to work with others to support<br/>equality and diversity</li> </ol>                                   | <ul> <li>4.1 Work with others to support diversity and equality for individuals with dementia</li> <li>4.2 Share an individual's preferences and interests with others</li> <li>4.3 Explain how to challenge discriminatory practice when working with an individual with dementia</li> </ul>   |  |



#### Diversity

This may include:

- History
- Family
- Culture
- Ethnicity
- Religion/belief
- Sex/gender
- Sexual orientation
- Work/life experience
- Age
- Disability

# Others e.g.

- Care worker
- Colleague
- Manager
- Social Worker
- Occupational Therapist
- GP
- Speech & Language Therapist
- Physiotherapist
- Pharmacist
- Nurse
- Psychologist
- Admiral Nurses
- Independent Mental Capacity Advocate
- Community Psychiatric Nurse
- Dementia Care Advisors
- Advocate
- Support groups

| Unit aim(s)                                 | This unit is aimed at those who provide care or |
|---|---|
|   | support to individuals with dementia in a wide  |
|   | range of settings. The unit covers the concepts |
|   | of equality, diversity and inclusion, which are |
|   | fundamental to person centred approach.         |
| Assessment requirements specified by a      | This qualification must be assessed in          |
| sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)  | accordance with the Assessment Principles       |
|   | developed by Skills for Care and Development    |
|   | to complement Ofqual requirements.              |
| Details of the relationship of the unit and | HSC 21, 31, 41, 24, 35, 45                      |
| relevant national occupational standards    |   |



| Title:  | J/650/1440 Support individuals with dementia to eat and drink   |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 3   |
| GLH:  | 16  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand how dementia affects the<br/>nutritional needs of <b>individual</b>s</li> </ol> | <ol> <li>1.1 Explain how dementia can affect an<br/>individual's eating and drinking</li> <li>1.2 Explain how poor nutrition can<br/>contribute to an individual's experience<br/>of dementia</li> <li>1.3 Outline how other health and emotional<br/>conditions may affect the nutritional<br/>needs of an individual with dementia</li> <li>1.4 Explain the importance of recognising<br/>and meeting an individual's personal<br/>and cultural preferences for food and<br/>drink</li> <li>1.5 Explain why it is important to include a<br/>variety of food and drink in the diet of</li> </ol>  |
| 2. Understand the effect that mealtime<br>environments can have on an individual<br>with dementia   | <ul> <li>an individual with dementia</li> <li>2.1 Describe how a person-centred approach can support an individual, with dementia at different levels of ability, to eat and drink</li> <li>2.2 Explain how mealtime cultures and environments can be a barrier to meeting the nutritional needs of an approach and the set of the set of</li></ul> |
|   | <ul> <li>individual with dementia</li> <li>2.3 Explain how mealtime environments can<br/>be designed to help an individual to eat<br/>and drink</li> <li>2.4 Explain how mealtime food presentation<br/>can be designed to help an individual to<br/>eat and drink</li> </ul>   |
| 3. Support an individual with dementia to eat and drink   | <ul> <li>3.1 Use an individual's life history to provide<br/>a diet that meets his/her preferences</li> <li>3.2 Support an individual with dementia to<br/>plan:</li> <li>mealtime environments</li> <li>eating and drinking</li> </ul>   |



| Additional information about this unit (a  | <ul> <li>food presentation</li> <li>3.3 Evaluate the use of person centred<br/>approach in providing the nutritional<br/>requirements of an individual with<br/>dementia</li> </ul> |  |
|--|---|--|
|  |   |  |
| An <b>individual</b> is someone requiring care or su   | ρροιτ   |  |
| <b>Person-centred approach:</b><br>This is a way of working which aims to put the person at the centre of the care situation taking into account their individuality, wishes and preferences |   |  |
| <ul> <li>Meal times:</li> <li>Meal planning</li> <li>Food shopping</li> <li>Food preparation</li> <li>Pre- and post-meal activities</li> <li>Dining</li> <li>Snacking</li> </ul>             |   |  |
| Unit aim(s)  | This unit is to assess the knowledge and  |  |
|  | skills required to support the eating and<br>drinking needs of an individual with dementia<br>through a person-centred approach.  |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by   | Learning outcome 3 needs to be assessed in  |  |
| a sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)   | the workplace environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in  |  |
|  | accordance with the Assessment Principles   |  |
|  | developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual  |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit  | requirements.<br>This unit links to HSC 213, HSC 214 and HSC  |  |
| and relevant national occupational   | 21, 31, 41, 24, 35, 45.   |  |
| standards  |   |  |



| Title:   | D/650/0863 Understand the<br>administration of medication to<br>individuals with dementia using a<br>person-centred approach  |  |
|--|---|--|
| Level:   | 3   |  |
| Credit Value:  | 3   |  |
| Calculated GLH:  | 15  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the common medications<br/>available to, and appropriate for,<br/>individuals with dementia</li> <li>Understand how to provide person<br/>centred care to individuals with<br/>dementia through the appropriate and<br/>effective use of medication</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Identify common medications used in your place of work to treat symptoms of dementia</li> <li>1.2 Describe how medications affect individuals with dementia</li> <li>1.3 Explain the risks and benefits of antipsychotic medication for individuals with dementia</li> <li>1.4 Explain the importance of recording and reporting side effects/adverse reactions to medication</li> <li>1.5 Describe how 'as required' (PRN) medication can be used to support individuals with dementia who may be in pain</li> <li>2.1 Describe person-centred ways of administering medicines whilst adhering to the requirements of the Mental Capacity Act</li> <li>2.2 Explain the importance of advocating for an individual with dementia who may be prescribed medication</li> </ul> |  |
| Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)   |   |  |
| <ul> <li>Administering</li> <li>Fitting with the routines of the individual</li> <li>Meeting the preferences of the individual (tablets/solutions)</li> <li>Enabling techniques</li> <li>Self-administration</li> </ul>  |   |  |
| Unit aim(s)  | This unit is about knowledge and<br>understanding of individuals who may have   |  |



|  | specific needs for receiving medication<br>because of their experience of dementia.<br>Learners will develop their knowledge of<br>these medication requirements. This unit<br>confirm competence. |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.                       |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | N/A  |



| Title:  | Y/616/5310 Understand models of disability   |  |
|---|--|--|
| Level:  | 3  |  |
| Credit Value:   | 3  |  |
| GLH:  | 26   |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |  |
| 1. Understand models of disability  | <ul><li>1.1 Explain <b>models</b> of disability</li><li>1.2 Compare models of disability</li></ul>   |  |
| 2. Understand how models of disability can shape an individual's identity and experience                            | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain how models of disability can impact on an individual's:</li> <li>identity</li> <li>experience</li> </ul>  |  |
| 3. Understand how models of disability affect service delivery  | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain how models of disability can shape service delivery</li> <li>3.2 Explain how work based practice can support individual's: <ul> <li>wellbeing</li> <li>quality of life</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |  |
| Additional information about this unit (an<br>Models:<br>• medical model<br>• social model<br>• psycho-social model | nplification for assessment criteria)  |  |
| Unit aim(s)   | The purpose of this unit is to provide the learner with knowledge and understanding of models of disability.   |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)                             | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.                                       |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards                          | Sensory Services 1,2,3,10,11   |  |



| Title:  | K/616/5313 Support young people<br>with a disability to make the transition<br>into adulthood  |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 3  |
| Credit Value:   | 5  |
| GLH:  | 40   |
| Learning Outcomes   | Assessment Criteria  |
| The learner will:   | The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand the steps and stages of moving from childhood into adulthood  | <ul> <li>1.1 Identify the changes which occur for young people as they move into adulthood</li> <li>1.2 Explain the changes faced by young people as they move from childhood into adulthood in relation to their: <ul> <li>Freedoms</li> <li>rights</li> <li>responsibilities</li> </ul> </li> <li>1.3 Explain how culture may impact on the process of moving from childhood into adulthood</li> </ul>   |
| <ol> <li>Understand how having a disability may<br/>affect the process of moving from<br/>childhood into adulthood</li> </ol>       | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain how theories of change can affect a young person with a disability</li> <li>2.2 Explain the potential effects of the transition process on young people with disabilities and their <b>families</b></li> <li>2.3 Identify challenges young people with a disability might have in: <ul> <li>understanding change</li> <li>coping with change</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.4 Outline the methods that can be used to support a young person with a disability to cope with the transition</li> </ul> |
| <ol> <li>Understand the options for supporting a young person who has a disability to make the transition into adulthood</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>a disability to cope with the transition from childhood to adulthood</li> <li>2.5 Explain how legislation and local and national practice guidelines support the transition for a young person with a disability from childhood into adulthood</li> <li>3.1 Explain how a young person with a disability can have the same opportunities to make life choices as a young person without a disability</li> </ul>   |



|    |  |     | Explain how to support a young person<br>with a disability to explore the options<br>available in relation to employment or<br>continued education and development |
|----|--|-----|--|
|    |  | 3.3 | Explain how personal budgets can be<br>used with young people in transition  |
|    |  | 3.4 | Explain the types of support that a  |
|    |  |     | young person with a disability may need during, the transition process   |
|    |  | 35  | Explain the role of <b>key agencies and</b>  |
|    |  | 5.5 | professionals likely to be involved in   |
|    |  |     | the transition process   |
| 4. | Support a young person with a disability | 4.1 | Support a young person to explore  |
|    | through transition into adulthood        |     | options for their future   |
|    |  | 4.2 | Use person-centred thinking to   |
|    |  |     | identify with the young person their   |
|    |  |     | needs and aspirations  |
|    |  | 4.3 | Use person-centred thinking to develop   |
|    |  |     | with the young person a plan to support  |
|    |  |     | them through transition  |
|    |  | 4.4 | Involve families in the transition process<br>according to the wishes of the young<br>person   |
|    |  | 4.5 | Identify ways to provide <b>resources</b> to   |
|    |  |     | meet a young person's needs  |
|    |  | 4.6 | Outline possible areas of tension and  |
|    |  |     | conflict that may arise during the   |
|    |  |     | transition into adulthood  |
| 5. | Be able to support a young person to     | 5.1 | Use person-centred approaches with   |
|    | reflect on the transition                |     | the young person to review their   |
|    |  | 52  | transition plan<br>Support a young person to record the  |
|    |  | J.2 | transition and what has happened in  |
|    |  |     | their life in order to plan for the future   |
|    |  |     |  |

Changes: physical, social, emotional changes

**Families** may also include others significant to the young person such as guardians, carers, friends, partners etc.

**Legislation and local and national practice guidelines** - current and up to date legislation and local and national practice guidelines around supporting a young person with a disability to move from childhood into adulthood

**Options for their future** – may include paid or voluntary work, continued education and development, relationships, accommodation and social needs etc.



**Person-centred thinking** is a range of practical tools that form the basis of personcentred planning. They help focus on the person, their gifts and skills, what is important to them, and what makes really good support for them.

**Resources** may include personal budgets, conventional services, support of family and friends

**Key agencies and professionals** – may include agencies offering support with personal budgets, careers advice, housing, advocates, education, benefits, occupational therapists citizens' advice etc.

**Person-centred approaches** - in England this will include Person Centred Transition Plans

| Unit aim(s)                             | This unit is aimed at those working in a wide |
|---|---|
|   | range of settings. The unit provides the      |
|   | learner with the knowledge and skills         |
|   | required to support young people with a       |
|   | disability to move from childhood into        |
|   | adulthood.                                    |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Learning outcomes 4 and 5 must be             |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | assessed in a real work environment.          |
| appropriate)                            | This qualification must be assessed in        |
|   | accordance with the Assessment Principles     |
|   | developed by Skills for Care and              |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual              |
|   | requirements.                                 |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | Links to HSC 310, 329, 332, 344, 412          |
| and relevant national occupational      |   |
| standards                               |   |



| Title:  | T/616/5315 Understand positive risk taking for individuals with disabilities  |  |
|---|---|--|
| Level:  | 3   |  |
| Credit Value:   | 3   |  |
| GLH:  | 25  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand that individuals with<br/>disabilities have the same right as<br/>everyone else to take risks</li> <li>Understand the importance of a positive,<br/>person-centred approach to risk<br/>assessment</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain ways in which risk is an integral part of everyday life</li> <li>1.2 Explain why people with disabilities may be discouraged or prevented from taking risks.</li> <li>1.3 Describe the links between risk-taking and responsibility, empowerment and social inclusion</li> <li>2.1 Explain the process of developing a positive person-centred approach to risk assessment</li> <li>2.2 Explain how to apply the principles and methods of a person-centred approach while assessing risk</li> </ul> |  |
|   | <ul> <li>2.3 Explain how a service focused approach to risk assessment would differ from a person-centred approach</li> <li>2.4 Identify the consequences for the individual of a service focused approach to risk-assessment</li> <li>2.5 Describe the different stages of carrying out risk assessments</li> </ul>  |  |
| 3. Understand the legal and policy<br>framework underpinning an individual<br>with disabilities right to make decisions<br>and take risks   | 3.1 Explain how legislation, national and<br>local policies and guidance provide a<br>framework for decision making which<br>can support an individual to have<br>control over their own lives  |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the importance of<br/>considering with an individual with<br/>disabilities the risks associated with the<br/>choices they make</li> </ol>   | <ul> <li>4.1 Explain why individuals with disabilities may be at risk of different forms of <b>abuse</b>, exploitation and harm in different areas of their lives</li> <li>4.2 Explain how to support individuals to recognise and manage potential risk in <b>different areas of their lives</b></li> </ul>  |  |



Individual is someone requiring care or support

Abuse may include the following types:

- Physical abuse
- Sexual abuse
- Emotional/psychological abuse
- Financial abuse
- Institutional abuse
- Self neglect
- Neglect by others

**Different areas of their lives** may include: in public places, in activities on-line, of social activities at home and in other private spaces, and of disclosing personal and financial information

**Others** may include

- The individual
- Colleagues
- Families or carers
- Friends
- Other professionals
- Members of the public
- Advocates

| Unit aim(s) | This unit promotes a positive, person-centred |
|-------------|---|
|             | approach to risk taking for individuals with  |
|             | disabilities and emphasises the importance of |
|             | working in partnership to support individuals |
|             | to take risks. It provides the opportunity to |
|             | reflect on difficulties and dilemmas          |



|  | commonly encountered when addressing<br>issues of risk, in the context of the legal and<br>policy frameworks.  |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | Links to HSC 3117  |



| Title:   | K/650/1441 Support families who have had a child with a disability   |  |
|--|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |  |
| Credit Value:  | 2  |  |
| GLH:   | 6  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the impact on a family of<br/>having a child with a disability</li> <li>2. Support families who have a child with a</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe the emotional impact that a diagnosis of a disability can have on families</li> <li>1.2 Explain how the impact of having a child with a disability can be rewarding and/or challenging</li> <li>1.3 Explain the emotional experience that families may have after diagnosis</li> <li>1.4 Explain how having a child with a disability may affect interpersonal relationships within a family</li> <li>1.5 Identify the changes that may need to be made to: <ul> <li>family life</li> <li>social life</li> <li>work</li> <li>accommodation</li> </ul> </li> <li>1.6 Explain why it is important for family members to have opportunities to explore feelings and experiences</li> <li>2.1 Establish with the family the support</li> </ul> |  |
| disability   | <ul> <li>required</li> <li>2.2 Work with the family to identify different ways that needs can be met</li> <li>2.3 Support family members to discuss feelings and experiences related to having a child with a disability</li> </ul>  |  |
| <ol> <li>Support families with a child with a<br/>disability to use informal networks and<br/>community resources</li> </ol>                       | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain informal networks and community resources for children with disabilities and their families</li> <li>3.2 Provide information to a family about community resources and informal networks to enable them to make choices</li> </ul>  |  |



|    |   | 3.3        | Support a family to use community resources and informal networks  |
|----|---|------------|--|
| 4. | Work in partnership with <b>other</b><br><b>professionals and agencies</b> to<br>support families with a child with a | 4.1<br>4.2 | Identify <b>support</b> and resources that a child with a disability may need Investigate the roles of other                     |
|    | disability  | 1.2        | professionals and agencies that may<br>provide support to families   |
|    |   | 4.3        | Provide information to a family about<br>professionals and agencies that may   |
|    |   | 4.4        | provide <b>support</b><br>Identify when referrals should be made<br>to other professionals and/or agencies                       |
|    |   | 4.5        | Work in partnership with other<br>professionals and agencies to provide<br>support to families with a child with a<br>disability |
|    |   | 4.6        | Review the outcomes for the family of partnership working  |
|    |   | 4.7        | Report any additional support required<br>by the family  |

#### Diagnosis e.g.

- Physical disabilities
- Learning disabilities
- Mental health problems
- Sensory disabilities

#### Interpersonal relationships within the family

- Relationships with siblings
- Relationships between siblings and parents
- Relationships with grandparents

#### Other professionals and agencies

- Teachers
- Educational Psychologist
- Educational Welfare
- Physiotherapist
- Occupational Therapist
- Nurse
- GP
- Social Worker
- Dietician
- Speech and Language Therapist



| <ul> <li>Support can include</li> <li>Support with personal care</li> <li>Support with equipment</li> <li>Advocacy</li> <li>Support with benefits</li> <li>Advice</li> <li>Housing</li> </ul> |   |
|---|---|
| Unit aim(s)   | This unit is aimed at those whose role<br>includes supporting families who have a child<br>with physical disabilities, learning disabilities,<br>mental health problems or sensory<br>disabilities.<br>It addresses emotional needs and resource<br>needs and it also addresses working with<br>other professionals and agencies. |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)   | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards  | N/A   |



| Title:  | Y/650/0861 Support parents with disabilities  |  |
|---|---|--|
| Level:  | 3   |  |
| Credit Value:   | 7   |  |
| Calculated GLH:   | 43  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the legislative and policy<br/>frameworks that underpins good<br/>practice in the support of parents with<br/>disabilities</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Outline the policy, legislation and guidance relevant to supporting individuals with disabilities to have children and bring them up in a safe and nurturing environment</li> <li>1.2 Explain the statutory responsibilities placed on organisations towards families and children who are in need</li> </ul>  |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the support available to<br/>parents with disabilities</li> </ol>   | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain the support provided by adults and children's services to a family receiving support</li> <li>2.2 Explain the ways in which independent advocates can play an important role in the support of parents with disabilities</li> <li>2.3 Explain the benefits of providing support to families at the earliest stage possible</li> </ul>                                  |  |
| 3. Support parents with disabilities  | <ul> <li>3.1 Assess the parent(s) and child(ren) to form the basis of any support</li> <li>3.2 Develop flexible support strategies to meet families' needs at the different stages of the child's development</li> <li>3.3 Implement support strategies to meet families' needs</li> <li>3.4 Evaluate support strategies to ensure they continue to meet the needs of the family</li> </ul> |  |
| <ol> <li>Support individuals with disabilities to<br/>overcome the barriers they may face in<br/>becoming parents and bringing up<br/>children</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>4.1 Analyse the implications for parents with disabilities of having their child assessed as being `in need'</li> <li>4.2 Explain why parents with disabilities are more likely to have their children removed from their care than parents who do not have disabilities</li> </ul>  |  |



|    |   | 12         | Support individuals with disabilities to   |
|----|---|------------|--|
|    |   | 4.3        | Support individuals with disabilities to<br>overcome barriers to successful<br>parenting   |
|    |   | 4.4        | Work in a way that promotes<br>individuals' self-determination and self-<br>confidence in their role as parents  |
|    |   | 4.5        | Support parents with learning,<br>communication and/or sensory<br>disabilities to acquire the skills and<br>knowledge they need, using methods<br>adapted to their learning needs and<br>circumstances |
| 5. | Develop positive working relationships<br>with parents with disabilities                                      | 5.1        | Analyse research into the wishes of<br>parents with disabilities about the<br>qualities, attitudes and approaches they<br>would like those working with them to<br>have                                |
|    |   | 5.2        | Use evidence based approaches in developing positive relationships with parents with disabilities  |
| 6. | Work in partnership with <b>other</b><br><b>workers</b> , different services and<br>informal support networks | 6.1        | Plan how to involve relevant services to support parents with disabilities and/or their children   |
|    |   | 6.2        | Access relevant services to support<br>parents with disabilities and/or their<br>children  |
|    |   | 6.3        | Demonstrate ways of helping to create,<br>enhance and work with informal<br>support networks   |
| 7. | Understand safeguarding and promoting the welfare of the child  | 7.1<br>7.2 | Explain own role and responsibilities in<br>relation to safeguarding children<br>Identify the processes set up under   |
|    |   | 7.2        | child protection legislation to establish<br>whether action is required to safeguard<br>or promote the child's welfare and to<br>intervene if necessary  |
|    |   | 7.3        | Describe the action to take in response<br>to any concerns regarding safeguarding<br>children  |
|    |   | 7.4        | may need in his/her own right  |
|    |   | /.5        | Describe the adjustments and additional<br>support that parents with disabilities<br>may need at different stages during<br>child protection processes and<br>procedures                               |
|    |   |            |  |



An **individual** is someone requiring care or support

**Statutory responsibilities** refers to those outlined in the current legislation

**Barriers** refers to external factors and may include: prejudice and negative stereotypes, social exclusion (poverty; poor housing; hate crime, bullying and harassment; lack of social networks etc.) and access to services and information

**Other workers** would include people supporting individuals within the family or the family as a whole. This may include for example: independent advocates, social workers, teachers, health practitioners etc.

| Unit aim(s)                             | This unit is aimed at those who work in wide  |
|---|---|
|   | range of settings. The unit provides          |
|   | knowledge, understanding and skills in        |
|   | relation to the different issues involved in  |
|   | supporting parents with disabilities to bring |
|   | up their children. It covers legislation,     |
|   | policies and guidance, types of support,      |
|   | barriers commonly faced by parents with a     |
|   | disability, developing positive working       |
|   | relationships with parents and working in     |
|   | partnership with others. Although the unit    |
|   | focuses on the need of the parent it also     |
|   | highlights the needs of the child(ren).       |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Assessment criteria 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 4.3,  |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | 4.4, 4.5, 5.1, 5.2, 6.1, 6.2, 6.3 must be     |
| appropriate)                            | assessed in a real work environment.          |
|   | This qualification must be assessed in        |
|   | accordance with the Assessment Principles     |
|   | developed by Skills for Care and              |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual              |
|   | requirements.                                 |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | Links to HSC 333, 388, 392                    |
| and relevant national occupational      |   |
| standards                               |   |



| Title:  | L/650/1442 Principles of supporting<br>young people with a disability to make<br>the transition into adulthood   |  |
|---|--|--|
| Level:  | 3  |  |
| Credit Value:   | 4  |  |
| GLH:  | 23   |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |  |
| 1. Understand the stages in moving from childhood into adulthood  | <ol> <li>1.1 Describe the <b>changes</b> a young person<br/>experiences as they move into<br/>adulthood</li> <li>1.2 Explain how culture affects young<br/>people moving from childhood into<br/>adulthood</li> <li>1.3 Explain theories of change for young<br/>people with a disability moving from<br/>childhood into adulthood</li> </ol>  |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand how having a disability may<br/>affect the process of moving from<br/>childhood into adulthood</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain how transition affects young people with disabilities their families</li> <li>2.2 Describe the challenges faced by young people with a disability when understanding and coping with change</li> <li>2.3 Describe methods used to support a young person with a disability to cope with changes</li> <li>2.4 Explain how current legislation, and</li> </ul>  |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the options for supporting young people with disability to make the transition into adulthood</li> </ol>  | <ul> <li>Iocal and national practice</li> <li>guidelines affects the planning of the transition for a young person with a disability from childhood into adulthood</li> <li>2.5 Describe the legislation that protects the rights of a young person with a disability to make decisions about their life</li> <li>3.1 Explain how a young person with a disability could be supported to have equal opportunities to make life choices</li> <li>3.2 Explain how to support a young person with a disability to explore employment</li> </ul> |  |
|   | or continued education and<br>development opportunities  |  |



|    |                                     | 3.3 | Explain how personal budgets can be used with young people in transition |
|----|-------------------------------------|-----|--|
|    |                                     |     |  |
|    |                                     |     | from childhood into adulthood  |
| 4. | Understand how to support young     | 4.1 | 1  |
|    | people with disability through a    |     | young person with a disability   |
|    | successful transition               | •   | before a transition  |
|    |                                     | •   | during a transition  |
|    |                                     | •   | after the transition process   |
|    |                                     | 4.2 | Describe the support available that a                                    |
|    |                                     |     | young person with a disability may                                       |
|    |                                     |     | require  |
|    |                                     | •   | before a transition  |
|    |                                     | •   | during a transition  |
|    |                                     | •   | after the transition process   |
|    |                                     | 4.3 | Explain how person-centred transition                                    |
|    |                                     |     | reviews can be used as part of the                                       |
|    |                                     |     | planning process   |
|    |                                     | 4.4 | Explain the difference in approaches to                                  |
|    |                                     |     | planning between children's' and adults'                                 |
|    |                                     |     | support services   |
|    |                                     | 4.5 | Describe how to involve families in the                                  |
|    |                                     |     | transition process   |
|    |                                     | 4.6 | Describe the role of <b>agencies and</b>                                 |
|    |                                     |     | other professionals involved in the                                      |
|    |                                     |     | transition process   |
|    |                                     | 4.7 | Describe areas of tension and conflict                                   |
|    |                                     |     | that can arise during the transition into                                |
|    |                                     |     | adulthood  |
|    |                                     | 4.8 | Evaluate methods of support available                                    |
|    |                                     |     | for young people with disabilities who                                   |
|    |                                     |     | have varying abilities   |
| 5. | Understand the importance of        | 5.1 | Explain why the views of the young                                       |
|    | supporting young people and their   |     | person and their family are included in                                  |
|    | family to reflect on the transition |     | evaluating transitions   |
|    |                                     | 5.2 | -  |
|    |                                     |     | accurate records of transition   |
|    |                                     |     |  |
|    |                                     |     |  |

**Families** may also include others significant to the young person such as guardians, carers, friends, partners

**Legislation and local and national practice guidelines -** current and up to date legislation, local and national practice guidelines around supporting a young person with a disability to move from childhood into adulthood



**Agencies and professionals** – may include social workers and agencies offering support with personal budgets, careers advice, housing, advocates, education, benefits, occupational therapists citizens advice

| Unit aim(s)  | The unit provides knowledge and<br>understanding about how to enable young<br>people with a disability to move from<br>childhood into adulthood.                             |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | Links to HSC 310, 329, 332, 344, 412   |



| Title:   | T/650/0860 Work with professionals<br>and agencies to support individuals<br>with physical disabilities  |
|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |
| Credit Value:  | 3  |
| Calculated GLH:  | 24   |
| Learning Outcomes  | Assessment Criteria  |
| The learner will:  | The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand the contribution that other<br/>professionals and agencies can make to<br/>support individuals with physical<br/>disabilities</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe when it would be important to involve other professionals to support individuals with physical disabilities</li> <li>1.2 Explain the different referral processes in your place of work to gain the support of other professionals</li> <li>1.3 Describe provision from across specialist agencies that operate in your place of work</li> <li>1.4 Analyse the impact specialist agencies have on providing wider services for the individual in your care</li> <li>1.5 Describe the values and skills which underpin joint working with other professionals and agencies</li> </ul> |
| <ol> <li>Assess the needs of individuals with<br/>physical disabilities for inclusive social<br/>care provision</li> </ol>                                   | <ul> <li>2.1 Assess when an individual's needs require input from other agencies and professionals</li> <li>2.2 Give the individual information about alternative provision options so that informed choices can be made</li> <li>2.3 Agree with the individual what they hope to achieve through referral to another agency and/or professional</li> </ul>  |
| 3. Demonstrate partnership working   | <ul> <li>3.1 Make a referral to other professionals and/or agencies in the agreed way</li> <li>3.2 Use verbal and written communication skills to make the individual's needs and wishes known</li> <li>3.3 Work in partnership with other agencies and or professionals to support the individual to meet their needs</li> </ul>  |



| Additional information about this unit (ar  | <ul> <li>3.4 Evaluate and record the outcomes for the individual of partnership working</li> <li>3.5 Document the work carried out with other professionals and or agencies</li> <li>mplification for assessment criteria)</li> </ul>  |
|---|--|
| <ul> <li>Professionals could include:</li> <li>Physiotherapist</li> <li>Occupational Therapist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Social Worker</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Speech and Language Therapist</li> </ul> Individual – the person requiring support or otherapist | care.  |
| Agencies - this can include agencies specific t   | o individual conditions  |
| Unit aim(s)   | This unit is aimed at those who provide care<br>or support to individuals with disabilities in a<br>wide range of settings. It involves working<br>with the individual to identify the support<br>required and working with professionals<br>and/or other agencies where the support sits<br>outside own role. |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)   | Assessment criteria 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 3.1,<br>3.2, 3.3, 3.5 must be assessed in a real work<br>environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.                    |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards  | N/A  |



| Titl | e:  | J/650/0875 Support individuals with multiple conditions and disabilities   |
|------|---|--|
| Lev  | /el:  | 3  |
| Cre  | dit Value:  | 5  |
| Cal  | culated GLH:  | 34   |
|      | e learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1.   | Understand the impact of multiple<br>conditions and/ disabilities on individuals                                  | <ol> <li>Explain the term multiple conditions and disabilities</li> <li>Describe the possible multiple conditions and disabilities that an individual may have</li> <li>Explain the impact on an individual's well-being and quality of life</li> <li>Explain the impact on an individual's opportunity to participate in a range of activities</li> </ol> |
| 2.   | Understand support available for<br>individuals with multiple conditions and<br>disabilities                      | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain equipment available to support individuals</li> <li>2.2 Explain resources available to support individuals</li> <li>2.3 Explain the role of informal networks in providing support to individuals</li> </ul>  |
| 3.   | Understand the different roles involved<br>in supporting individuals with multiple<br>conditions and disabilities | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain own role and responsibilities in supporting individuals within agreed ways of working</li> <li>3.2 Explain the roles and responsibilities of other professionals involved in supporting individuals</li> </ul>  |
| 4.   | Assist individuals with multiple<br>conditions and disabilities to engage in<br>activities                        | <ul> <li>4.1 Support an individual to identify their needs and preferences</li> <li>4.2 Support an individual to identify resources to support engagement in activities</li> <li>4.3 Support an individual to identify specialist equipment to support engagement in activities</li> </ul>   |



|   | 4.4 Support an individual to engage in activities that meet their identified needs and preferences  |  |
|---|---|--|
| <ol> <li>Evaluate the support provided to an<br/>individual with multiple conditions and<br/>disabilities in order to engage in<br/>activities</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>5.1 Support the individual to assess how well the activity has met their needs and preferences</li> <li>5.2 Review with others the support given to an individual to engage in an activity</li> <li>5.3 Reflect on support given by yourself to an individual to engage in activities</li> <li>5.4 Explain how you have adapted your own practice to support the needs of an individual</li> </ul> |  |
| Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)  |   |  |
| N/A   |   |  |
| Unit aim(s)   | The purpose of this unit is to provide the<br>learner with knowledge, understanding and<br>skills required to support individuals with<br>multiple conditions and disabilities.   |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by  | Assessment criteria 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 4.4 and  |  |
| a sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)  | 5.1, 5.2 must be assessed in a real work  |  |
| appi opi iate)  | environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.  |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit   | N/A   |  |
| and relevant national occupational standards  |   |  |



| Title:  | M/650/1443 Support individuals with a learning disability to access healthcare  |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 3   |
| GLH:  | 25  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand legislation, policies and<br/>guidance relevant to individuals with<br/>learning disabilities accessing healthcare</li> </ol>                                 | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe what is meant by a rights based approach to accessing healthcare</li> <li>1.2 Outline the main legislation that exists to support a rights based approach</li> <li>1.3 Explain the requirements of legislation if an individual with learning disabilities is assessed to not have capacity to consent to a specific treatment decision</li> <li>1.4 Explain ways to support an individual to give informed consent in line with legislation, policies or guidance</li> <li>1.5 Explain ways in which healthcare services should make 'reasonable adjustments' to ensure that they provide equal access to individuals</li> </ul> |
| 2. Understand the function of different<br>healthcare services that an individual<br>with learning disabilities may need to<br>access   | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain the work of healthcare services that an individual with learning disabilities may need to access</li> <li>2.2 Explain how an individual can access each type of healthcare service</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the role of professionals<br/>within different healthcare services that<br/>a person with learning disabilities may<br/>need to access</li> </ol>             | 3.1 Describe the role and responsibility of professionals working in different types of healthcare services   |
| <ol> <li>Understand how plans for healthcare<br/>and regular health checks underpin<br/>long-term health and well-being for<br/>individuals with learning disabilities</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>4.1 Explain how plans for healthcare can be used to support the healthcare needs of an individual with learning disabilities</li> <li>4.2 Identify the health checks available to individuals to support health and well being</li> <li>4.3 Explain the importance of routine healthcare checks</li> </ul>   |
| 5. Complete and review plans for healthcare   | 5.1 Identify who needs to be involved in the process of completing and reviewing plans  |



|    |  | 5.2 | Complete plans for healthcare with an       |
|----|--|-----|---|
|    |  |     | individual or <b>significant others</b> 5.3 |
|    |  |     | Review plans for healthcare with an         |
|    |  |     | individual or significant others            |
| 6. | Understand the issues that an individual | 6.1 | Describe barriers to accessing              |
|    | with learning disabilities may face when |     | healthcare services                         |
|    | accessing a variety of healthcare        | 6.2 | Explain ways to overcome barriers to        |
|    | services                                 |     | accessing healthcare services               |
|    |  | 6.3 | Explain why an individual with learning     |
|    |  |     | disabilities may face additional barriers   |
| 7. | Support an individual with learning      | 7.1 | Use a <b>person-centred</b> approach to     |
|    | disabilities when accessing a variety of |     | support an individual to access             |
|    | healthcare services                      |     | healthcare services                         |
|    |  | 7.2 | Provide accessible information related      |
|    |  |     | to healthcare to individuals                |
|    |  | 7.3 | Work with <b>others</b> when supporting an  |
|    |  |     | individual to access healthcare services    |
|    |  | 7.4 | Support individuals in a range of           |
|    |  |     | practical healthcare situations             |
|    |  | 7.5 | Support the individual to make safe         |
|    |  |     | choices with regard to treatments and       |
|    |  |     | medication                                  |
|    |  | 7.6 | Record details of a healthcare visit in a   |
|    |  |     | format that an individual can               |
|    |  |     | understand in line with agreed ways of      |
|    |  |     | working                                     |
|    |  | 7.7 | Identify an individual's needs to           |
|    |  |     | healthcare professionals to ensure that     |
|    |  |     | the service can be accessed                 |
|    |  |     |   |
| -  |  | ·   |   |

The principles of person centred care underpin this unit. Learners must recognise that the people they work with have differing needs, which, although they may be affected by a specific condition or syndrome, are unique to that individual

#### Healthcare services may include:

- primary healthcare services
- acute healthcare services
- specialist healthcare services
- community healthcare services

Plans for healthcare – In England this refers to / should include Health Action Plans

#### Others and Significant others may include

- The individual
- Colleagues



- Families or carers
- Friends
- Other professionals
- Members of the public
- Advocates

**Person-centred** reflects what is important to individuals and helps them to live the life they choose

#### Practical healthcare situations includes:

- Making and keeping a routine health check appointment
- Making a complaint about a healthcare professional
- Describing pain or other symptoms to a healthcare professional
- Spending a night in hospital and having a medical procedure

**Treatments and medication** may include: complementary therapies, self-medicating, over the counter medicine

| Unit aim(s)  | This unit is aimed at those working in a wide<br>range of settings. It provides the knowledge<br>and skills necessary to support individuals<br>with a learning disability to access and use a<br>variety of healthcare services. It requires<br>knowledge of the specific issues that a<br>person with learning disabilities may<br>experience when accessing healthcare<br>services, ways of overcoming these issues,<br>and how best to support an individual in a<br>professional manner. It also requires the<br>demonstration of skills in person-centred<br>practice related to accessing healthcare<br>services. |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body (if | LOs 5 and 7 must be assessed in a real work environment.   |
| appropriate)   | This qualification must be assessed in   |
| αρριοριίατο  | accordance with the Assessment Principles  |
|  | developed by Skills for Care and   |
|  | Development to complement Ofqual   |
|  | requirements.  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit                              | N/A  |
| and relevant national occupational                                   |  |
| standards  |  |



| Title:   | L/650/0868 Understand sensory loss  |
|--|---|
| Level:   | 3   |
| Credit Value:  | 3   |
| Calculated GLH:  | 24  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand the causes of <b>sensory loss</b>  | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain the causes of sensory loss</li> <li>1.2 Differentiate between congenital<br/>sensory loss and acquired sensory<br/>loss</li> </ul>   |
| 2. Know how to support individuals<br>experiencing sensory loss  | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe the indicators of sensory loss</li> <li>2.2 Explain actions to be taken if there are concerns about an individual with: <ul> <li>onset of sensory loss</li> <li>changes in sensory status</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.3 Describe sources of support for individuals experiencing: <ul> <li>onset of sensory loss</li> <li>changes in sensory status</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| 3. Understand <b>factors</b> that impact on an individual with <b>sensory loss</b>                       | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain how factors have an impact on individuals with sensory loss</li> <li>3.2 Explain how societal attitudes and beliefs may have an impact on individuals with sensory loss</li> </ul>   |
| <ol> <li>Understand the importance of<br/>communication for individuals with<br/>sensory loss</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>4.1 Explain methods of communication used<br/>by individuals with sensory loss</li> <li>4.2 Explain how environments facilitate<br/>communication for individuals with<br/>sensory loss</li> <li>4.3 Explain how communication impacts on<br/>individuals with sensory loss</li> </ul>   |

#### **Congenital sensory loss**

Is when the loss was present at birth or very soon after

#### Acquired sensory loss

Is when the impairment develops later in the person's life.



# Sensory Loss could include:

- Sight loss
- Hearing loss
- Deaf/blindness
- Loss of taste
- Loss of touch
- Loss of smell

Factors could include:

- Communication
- Information
- Familiar layouts and routines
- Mobility

| Unit aim(s)                             | The purpose of this unit is to provide the |
|---|--|
|   | learner with knowledge and understanding   |
|   | about sensory loss.                        |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in     |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | accordance with the Assessment Principles  |
| appropriate)                            | developed by Skills for Care and           |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual           |
|   | requirements.                              |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | N/A  |
| and relevant national occupational      |  |
| standards                               |  |



| Titl | le:  | A/650/0871 Support the assessment of individuals with sensory loss   |
|------|--|--|
| Lev  | /el:   | 3  |
| Cre  | edit Value:  | 4  |
| Cal  | culated GLH:   | 31   |
| Lea  | arning Outcomes  | Assessment Criteria  |
| The  | e learner will:  | The learner can:   |
| 1.   | Understand types of assessments<br>available to individuals with <b>sensory</b><br><b>loss</b> | <ol> <li>1.1 Describe types of assessments that are<br/>available to individuals</li> <li>1.2 Explain the purpose of assessments<br/>available to individuals</li> <li>1.3 Explain 'holistic assessment' for<br/>individuals</li> <li>1.4 Explain 'eligibility criteria' in relation to<br/>the assessment of individuals</li> </ol>   |
| 2.   | Understand roles involved in assessment<br>of individuals with sensory loss                    | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain own roles and responsibilities in supporting assessment of individuals</li> <li>2.2 Explain roles and responsibilities of others in supporting assessment of individuals</li> <li>2.3 Explain how to involve individuals in an assessment</li> </ul>  |
| 3.   | Support assessment of individuals with<br>sensory loss   | <ul> <li>3.1 Support an individual to actively participate in an assessment</li> <li>3.2 Gather information for assessment of an individual using: <ul> <li>formal methods</li> <li>informal methods</li> </ul> </li> <li>3.3 Agree areas of assessment where an individual will require input from others</li> <li>3.4 Contribute to the assessment of an individual within boundaries of own work role</li> <li>3.5 Record observations of agreed areas for assessment in line with agreed ways of working</li> <li>3.6 Provide records to support an assessment adhering to agreed ways of working</li> </ul> |



- Review the effects of assessment on service delivery for an individual with sensory loss
- 4.1 Review the impact of an assessment on service delivery for an individual 4.2 Support the individual to identify the impact of an assessment on their **wellbeing**

Sensory loss can include loss of:

- Hearing
- Sight
- Touch
- Taste
- Smell

#### Others could include:

- Other professionals
- Carers / family members
- Advocates
- Colleagues
- Specialist organisations

#### Wellbeing e.g.

- Emotional
- Psychological
- Physical

#### Formal and informal methods could include:

- Observation
- Communication
- Feedback from individuals
- Feedback from families / carers / friends
- Reviews

| Unit aim(s)   | The purpose of this unit is to provide the<br>learner with knowledge, understanding and<br>skills required to support assessment of<br>individuals with sensory loss.   |
|---|---|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate) | Learning Outcomes 3 and 4 must be<br>assessed in real work environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |



| Details of the relationship of the unit | N/A |
|---|-----|
| and relevant national occupational      |     |
| standards                               |     |



| Title:  | L/650/0859 Support communication with individuals with sensory loss   |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| Level:  | 3   |  |  |
| Credit Value:   | 4   |  |  |
| Calculated GLH:   | 29  |  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |  |
| 1. Understand the importance of communication   | <ol> <li>Explain what is meant by the term<br/>communication</li> <li>Describe why communication is<br/>important when working with individuals<br/>with <b>sensory loss</b></li> <li>Describe the characteristics of<br/>communication that is:         <ul> <li>based on formal language systems</li> <li>not based on formal language<br/>systems</li> </ul> </li> </ol>                           |  |  |
| 2. Understand how to support<br>communication with individuals with<br>sensory loss                           | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe ways to support<br/>communication with individuals with<br/>sensory loss</li> <li>2.2 Explain how different work roles support<br/>communication with individuals with<br/>sensory loss</li> </ul>  |  |  |
| 3. Support communication with an individual with sensory loss   | <ul> <li>3.1 Support an individual with sensory loss to identify ways to develop communication skills</li> <li>3.2 Agree with an individual with sensory loss preferred methods of communication</li> <li>3.3 Prepare an environment to facilitate communication for an individual with sensory loss</li> <li>3.4 Use agreed methods of communication with an individual with sensory loss</li> </ul> |  |  |
| <ol> <li>Evaluate methods of communication<br/>used to support an individual with<br/>sensory loss</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>4.1 Monitor communication with an individual with sensory loss</li> <li>4.2 Evaluate use of agreed methods of communication with an individual with sensory loss</li> <li>4.3 Share an evaluation of agreed methods of communication with an individual with sensory loss with sensory loss with:</li> </ul>   |  |  |



|  | <ul> <li>an individual with sensory loss</li> <li>others and different members of the care team</li> <li>4.4 Explain how to improve agreed methods of communication with an individual with sensory loss</li> </ul>                           |
|--|---|
| <ul> <li>Additional information about this unit (an</li> <li>Sensory Loss could include:</li> <li>sight loss</li> <li>hearing loss</li> <li>deaf</li> <li>blindness</li> </ul> | mplification for assessment criteria)   |
| Unit aim(s)  | The purpose of this unit is to provide the<br>learner with knowledge and skills required to<br>support communication with individuals with<br>sensory loss.   |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)  | LO 3 and LO 4 must be assessed in a real<br>work environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards   | N/A   |



| Title:  | Y/616/5355 Support the promotion of awareness of sensory loss  |  |
|---|--|--|
| Level:  | 3  |  |
| Credit Value:   | 1  |  |
| GLH:  | 6  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |  |
| 1. Understand the value of promoting awareness of sensory loss  | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain why it is important to promote awareness of sensory loss for:</li> <li>individuals</li> <li>service provision</li> <li>social perceptions and attitudes</li> </ul>  |  |
| 2. Understand the role of self and others in promoting awareness of sensory loss  | <ul> <li>2.1 Outline own role in promoting<br/>awareness of sensory loss</li> <li>2.2 Outline the roles of others who may<br/>play a part in promoting the awareness<br/>of sensory loss</li> </ul>  |  |
| 3. Provide information that promotes awareness of sensory loss  | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain the information and resources available in relation to sensory loss within your own local Health economy.</li> <li>3.2 Provide others with information on evidence based best practice relevant to your own service area</li> </ul> |  |
| <ul> <li>Additional information about this unit (an Sensory Loss could include:</li> <li>Sight loss</li> <li>Hearing loss</li> <li>Deaf/blindness</li> <li>Loss of taste</li> <li>Loss of touch</li> <li>Loss of smell</li> </ul> | nplification for assessment criteria)  |  |
| Others could include:<br>• Other professionals<br>• Carers / family members<br>• Advocate<br>• Colleagues   |  |  |



| Unit aim(s)  | The purpose of this unit is to provide the<br>learner with knowledge, understanding and<br>skills required to promote awareness of<br>sensory loss. This unit would be useful for<br>those who undertake specialist roles.               |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | LO 3 and 4 must be assessed in real work<br>environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | N/A  |



| Title:  | M/618/5112 Promote rights and values in assistive technology in social care   |  |
|---|---|--|
| Level:  | 3   |  |
| Credit Value:   | 3   |  |
| GLH:  | 17  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand rights and values for<br/>assistive technology</li> <li>Understand how assistive technology<br/>can support the rights of an individual<br/>and others</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe where human rights are underpinned by legislation and codes of practice</li> <li>1.2 Explain how assistive technology can promote an <b>individual</b>'s human rights</li> <li>1.3 Explain how assistive technology may conflict with an individual's human rights</li> <li>1.4 Explain the potential conflicts of interest where assistive technology may be adopted as a substitute for direct support</li> <li>1.5 Explain how to support an individual and <b>others</b> to challenge implementation of assistive technology</li> <li>2.1 Explain ways in which assistive technology</li> <li>2.1 Explain the potential of assistive technology</li> <li>2.2 Explain the potential of assistive technology</li> <li>2.3 Explain how assistive technology may</li> </ul> |  |
|   | <ul><li>2.3 Explain now assistive technology may gather personal data about individuals and others</li><li>2.4 Explain the safeguards that can be put in place to protect personal data</li></ul>   |  |



| 3. | Be able to support the rights of an<br>individual and others in the<br>implementation of assistive technology | 3.1<br>•<br>•<br>3.2<br>3.3 | Support an individual and others to<br>understand the benefits of assistive<br>technology to their:<br>dignity<br>autonomy<br>privacy<br>confidentiality<br>Work with an individual and others to<br>address conflicts between proposed<br>assistive technology solution and their<br>human rights<br>Support an individual and others to |
|----|---|-----------------------------|---|
|    |   | 3.4                         | understand the risks of assistive<br>technology to their:<br>• dignity<br>• autonomy<br>• privacy<br>• confidentiality<br>Ensure an individual and others are<br>informed about the use of their<br>personal data   |

# Assistive technology may include:

# Electronic: e.g.

- sensor mats/pads
- pendants/telecare
- echo bot/reminding tool
- key pad entries
- keys with lights
- applications for budgeting/direction finding/instructions
- talking books

#### Physical: e.g.

- kettle tippers
- jar openers
- special cutlery/utensils
- key safe box
- stocking aids

## Organisational e.g.

- iPads/apps/tablets
- PCs/laptops
- video links
- webinars
- software packages



| Remotely or virtually operated assistive technology  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| An individual is someone requiring care or support   |  |  |
| Others may include:<br>• colleagues<br>• team members<br>• carers<br>• families<br>• other professionals |  |  |
| Unit aim(s)  | The purpose of this unit is to assess the<br>learner's knowledge, understanding and skills<br>required to support the implementation of<br>assistive technology taking into account the<br>key areas of values, dignity and human<br>rights. |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)                  | Learning outcome 3 must be assessed in the<br>work setting.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.  |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards               | N/A  |  |



| Title:  | K/616/5361 Installation, maintenance<br>and removal of assistive technology in<br>social care   |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 2   |
| GLH:  | 15  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand the implications for<br/>individuals and others of assistive<br/>technology installation</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain the impact of installing assistive technology on: <ul> <li>an individual</li> <li>others</li> </ul> </li> <li>1.2 Explain policies and procedures for safety in relation to assistive technology when working in an individual's own home</li> </ul>   |
| 2. Install assistive technology   | <ul> <li>2.1 Support an individual and carers to understand the purpose of installing assistive technology</li> <li>2.2 Work in partnership with an individual and others to ascertain location for assistive technology devices</li> <li>2.3 Complete safety and operational checks for assistive technology and any linked services</li> <li>2.4 Carry out installation of assistive technology with regard to the individual's needs and choices</li> <li>2.5 Ensure operability of assistive technology</li> <li>2.6 Support an individual and others to understand instructions on safe use</li> <li>2.7 Discuss service agreements with an individual and others</li> </ul> |
| 3. Support an individual and others to maintain assistive technology  | <ul> <li>3.1 Provide an individual and others with information on the maintenance of assistive technology</li> <li>3.2 Ensure an individual and others are aware of support available if assistive technology becomes inoperable</li> </ul>   |



| 4. | Support an individual and others to remove assistive technology | 4.1 | Provide information to an individual and<br>others on removal and disposal of  |
|----|---|-----|--|
|    |   | 4.2 | assistive technology after use<br>Support an individual and others to<br>carry out removal of assistive<br>technology in accordance with <b>agreed</b> |
|    |   |     | ways of working  |

This unit refers to remotely or virtually operated assistive technology

An **individual** is someone requiring care or support

- Policies and procedures for safety including:
- Safeguarding
- Infection prevention
- Fire risk
- Risk Assessment

**Others** may include:

- Colleagues
- team members
- carers
- families
- other professionals

Support available if assistive technology becomes inoperable including:

- Procedure
- Contact details
- Associated cost

**Agreed ways of working** may include organisational practices, policies and procedures where they exist

| Unit aim(s)                          | The purpose of this unit is to assess the<br>learner's knowledge, understanding and skills<br>required to support the installation,<br>maintenance and removal of assistive<br>technology. |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by | Learning outcomes 2, 3, 4, must be assessed  |
| a sector or regulatory body (if      | in the work setting.   |
| appropriate)                         | This qualification must be assessed in   |
|                                      | accordance with the Assessment Principles  |
|                                      | developed by Skills for Care and   |
|                                      | Development to complement Ofqual   |
|                                      | requirements.  |



| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational | N/A |
|---|-----|
| standards   |     |



| Tit    | le:  |            | 16/5171 Interact with and support viduals using telecommunications  |
|--------|--|------------|---|
| Level: |  | 3          |   |
| Cre    | edit Value:  | 5          |   |
| GL     | H:   | 36         |   |
|        | arning Outcomes<br>e learner will:   |            | essment Criteria<br>learner can:  |
| 1.     | Understand the legal and local<br>requirements relating to the use of<br>telecommunications when supporting<br>individuals<br>Be able to use telecommunication | 1.2        | Describe the legal and local<br>requirements and policies relevant to<br>the functions being carried out<br>Explain the rights of the individual being<br>supported using telecommunications<br>Use different types of  |
| 2.     | technology   | 2.2<br>2.3 | telecommunication technology<br>Explain how interactions may differ<br>depending on the type of<br>telecommunication technology used<br>Respond to individuals according to<br>organisational policies<br>Record details of interactions in the<br>appropriate system   |
| 3.     | Be able to engage with individuals using telecommunications  | 3.2        | <ul> <li>Engage with the individual without face to face interaction including:</li> <li>providing opportunities to sustain the interaction</li> <li>providing reassurance of continued interest</li> <li>encouraging individuals to share their concerns</li> <li>responding to the individual's immediate requirements at each stage during the interaction</li> <li>recognising where anonymity may encourage them to respond</li> <li>Provide information about the service and confirm its appropriateness to the individual</li> <li>Identify the significance of the circumstances the individual is in</li> </ul> |



|    |   | 3.4 | Encourage callers to provide additional information about their situation or requirements |
|----|---|-----|---|
|    |   | 3.5 | Maintain the confidentiality of the   |
|    |   |     | individual, self, and colleagues  |
|    |   |     | according to the procedures of the  |
|    |   |     | service   |
|    |   | 3.6 | Comply with legal and organisational  |
|    |   |     | requirements and policies relevant to   |
|    |   |     | the functions being carried out   |
| 4. | Be able to identify and evaluate any    | 4.1 | Identify the types of risks or dangers  |
|    | risks or dangers for individuals during |     | different individuals might face.   |
|    | the interaction                         | 4.2 | Evaluate the implications of any risk or  |
|    |   |     | dangers facing an individual, including:  |
|    |   |     | • the circumstances in which the  |
|    |   |     | interaction is being made   |
|    |   |     | <ul> <li>the types of problems which could</li> </ul>                                     |
|    |   |     | occur   |
|    |   |     | <ul> <li>the significance of any signs of</li> </ul>                                      |
|    |   |     | increased stress during interactions  |
|    |   |     | • whether there are any constraints on  |
|    |   |     | individuals   |
|    |   |     | <ul> <li>the appropriate action to deal with</li> </ul>                                   |
|    |   |     | any risks, dangers or problems  |
| 5. | Be able to terminate the interaction    | 5.1 | Demonstrate how to end interactions   |
|    |   |     | including:  |
|    |   |     | <ul> <li>identifying when to close the</li> </ul>   |
|    |   |     | interaction   |
|    |   |     | <ul> <li>providing clear information to the</li> </ul>                                    |
|    |   |     | individual on the reasons for ending  |
|    |   |     | the interaction   |
|    |   |     | <ul> <li>operating to the guidelines and</li> </ul>                                       |
|    |   |     | procedures of the organisation  |
|    |   |     | <ul> <li>explaining what further action may<br/>be taken</li> </ul>                       |
|    |   | 5.2 | Identify situations where it would be   |
|    |   |     | dangerous or disadvantageous to the   |
|    |   |     | interest of the individual to terminate   |
|    |   |     | the interaction   |
|    |   | 5.3 | Record and check the individual's   |
|    |   |     | demographic details   |
|    |   | 5.4 | Identify why recording and checking   |
|    |   |     | details might be required before  |
|    |   |     | ending/transferring the call  |
|    |   |     |   |
|    |   |     |   |



| Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)             |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| N/A  |  |  |
| Unit aim(s)  | This unit is aimed at those who interact with<br>individuals using telecommunications. This<br>involves establishing interactions, sustaining<br>interactions and ending interactions with<br>individuals using telecommunications. The<br>emphasis is on supportive interactions rather<br>than providing a general advice service. |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body (if                       | This unit must be assessed in line with Skills for Health Assessment Principles.   |  |
| appropriate)   | Learning outcomes 2, 3, 4 and 5 are assessed in the workplace.   |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | This unit links to GEN21.  |  |



| Title:   | R/650/1444 Support individuals in the use of assistive technology  |  |
|--|--|--|
| Level:   | 4  |  |
| Credit Value:  | 4  |  |
| GLH:   | 32   |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |  |
| 1. Understand the assistive technology<br>available to support individuals                   | <ol> <li>Evaluate assistive technology that is<br/>available to support individuals in own<br/>area of work</li> <li>Explain how assistive technology can<br/>have a positive impact on the <b>well</b><br/><b>being</b> and quality of life of individuals</li> </ol>   |  |
| <ol> <li>Support the selection of assistive technology with individuals</li> </ol>           | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain own role and the roles of others<br/>in the provision of assistive technology</li> <li>2.2 Support an individual to access<br/>specialist information and guidance<br/>about assistive technology</li> <li>2.3 Support an individual to use assistive<br/>technology</li> <li>2.4 Support an individual to select assistive<br/>technology to meet their needs and<br/>preferences</li> </ul> |  |
| 3. Support the use of assistive technology aids with an individual                           | <ul> <li>3.1 Prepare the environment to support the use of assistive technology</li> <li>3.2 Support the use of assistive technology following instructions or guidelines within boundaries of own role</li> <li>3.3 Record the use of assistive technology</li> <li>3.4 Explain when and to whom referrals for maintenance or repair would be made</li> </ul>   |  |
| <ol> <li>Evaluate the use of assistive technology<br/>to meet identified outcomes</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>4.1 Review the effectiveness of assistive technology against identified outcomes with individuals and / or <b>others</b></li> <li>4.2 Provide feedback to others on the use of assistive technology</li> <li>4.3 Revise plans to use assistive technology to achieve identified outcomes</li> <li>4.4 Evaluate own practice in using assistive technology to meet identified outcomes</li> </ul>          |  |



|  | 4.5 Adapt own practice to support the needs of the individual  |
|--|--|
| Additional information about this unit (a  | nplification for assessment criteria)  |
| <ul><li>Well Being:</li><li>Emotional</li><li>Psychological</li><li>Physical</li></ul>   |  |
| <ul> <li>Others could include:</li> <li>Other professionals</li> <li>Carers / family members</li> <li>Advocates</li> <li>Colleagues</li> </ul> |  |
| Unit aim(s)  | The purpose of this unit is to provide the<br>learner with knowledge, understanding and<br>skills required to support individuals with the<br>use of assistive technology.   |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)  | Learning outcomes 2, 3 and 4 must be<br>assessed in a real work environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards   | N/A  |



| Title:   | L/616/5319 Understand how to<br>support individuals with autistic<br>spectrum conditions  |
|--|---|
| Level:   | 3   |
| Credit Value:  | 3   |
| GLH:   | 26  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand the characteristics of autistic<br/>spectrum conditions</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe a range of conditions in the autistic spectrum</li> <li>1.2 Explain how autistic spectrum conditions are diagnosed</li> <li>1.3 Describe difficulties experienced by individuals with autistic spectrum conditions that are: <ul> <li>sensory</li> <li>perceptual</li> </ul> </li> <li>1.4 Describe other conditions that are associated with the autistic spectrum</li> <li>1.5 Describe how language ability varies across the autistic spectrum between: <ul> <li>individuals</li> <li>sub-groups</li> </ul> </li> <li>1.6 Describe how intellectual ability varies across the spectrum between: <ul> <li>individuals</li> <li>sub-groups</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| <ol> <li>Understand different theories and<br/>concepts about autism</li> </ol>        | <ul> <li>sub-groups</li> <li>2.1 Explain theories about autism related<br/>to:         <ul> <li>brain function</li> <li>genetics</li> <li>psychology</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.2 Describe the strengths and limitations of<br/>different types of terminology related to<br/>autism</li> <li>2.3 Outline controversies concerning the<br/>search for             <ul> <li>cures</li> <li>interventions for autistic spectrum<br/>conditions</li> <li>and for pre-natal diagnosis</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |



| 3. | Understand the legal and policy<br>frameworks that underpin good practice<br>in the support of individuals with autistic<br>spectrum conditions |          | Explain why it is important to take into<br>account individual differences when<br>supporting individuals<br>Explain how the work of autistic rights<br>groups has influenced the support for<br>individuals with an autistic spectrum<br>condition<br>Outline legislation, policies and<br>procedures that relate to individuals<br>with autistic spectrum conditions<br>Explain how the application of<br>legislation, policies and procedures may<br>differ according to the particular needs |
|----|---|----------|--|
| 4. | Understand how autistic spectrum<br>conditions affects the lives of<br><b>individuals</b> and <b>others</b>                                     | 4.1      | of individuals<br>Explain ways in which autism affects<br>the everyday lives of:   |
|    | individuals and others  | •<br>4.2 | individuals<br>others<br>Explain how autistic spectrum<br>conditions affects individuals in different<br>ways  |
| 5. | Understand how to achieve effective<br>communication with individuals with an<br>autistic spectrum condition                                    | 5.1      | Describe how displays of challenging<br>behaviour are a way of expressing<br>emotions for individuals with autistic<br>spectrum conditions   |
|    |   | 5.2      | Describe ways to support<br>communication with an individual with<br>an autistic spectrum condition  |
|    |   | 5.3      | Explain how to adapt own<br>communication approaches to meet the<br>needs of individuals with autistic<br>spectrum conditions  |
| 6. | Understand how to support individuals with an autistic spectrum condition   | 6.1      | Explain how person-centred planning is<br>used to support an individual's <b>specific</b>  |
|    |   | 6.2      | used in person-centred planning and  |
|    |   | 6.3      | support<br>Describe how to support individuals with<br>an autistic spectrum condition to learn<br>and develop new skills   |
|    |   | 6.4      | Explain how to adapt the environment to  |
|    |   |          | <ul><li>reduce sensory overload</li><li>increase sensory stimulation</li></ul>   |



|  | <ul> <li>6.5 Explain ways of helping an individual with an autistic spectrum condition to protect themselves from harm</li> <li>6.6 Explain how the changing needs of individuals with autistic spectrum conditions affect: <ul> <li>the individual</li> <li>their family</li> </ul> </li> <li>6.7 Describe the role that advocacy can play in the support of individuals with autistic spectrum conditions affect:</li> </ul> |
|--|--|
|--|--|

#### Individuals and others may be the:

- service user
- themselves
- parents, families and carers

**Specific preferences and needs** are the wants that a person may have and how these will be met by all of those involved

#### Others may be:

those involved in the care and wellbeing of the person including families, parents and carers, social workers, nurses, GP's, occupational therapists, speech and language therapists and psychologists

#### Harm may include:

Injuries that a person may inflict on themselves as a result of not having the specific support that they need or abuse inflicted upon them by others who may not have that person's best interests at heart

| Unit aim(s)                          | The unit provides a range of knowledge and<br>understanding about autistic spectrum<br>conditions and explores theories and<br>concepts about autism. It enables learners to<br>reflect on the impact of these conditions on<br>the lives of individuals and those close to<br>them and to learn about good practice in |
|--------------------------------------|---|
|                                      | areas such as communication and support.  |
| Assessment requirements specified by | This qualification must be assessed in  |
| a sector or regulatory body (if      | accordance with the Assessment Principles   |
| appropriate)                         | developed by Skills for Care and  |
|                                      | Development to complement Ofqual  |
|                                      | requirements.   |



| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational | N/A |
|---|-----|
| standards   |     |



| Title:  | K/650/0867 Support individuals with autistic spectrum conditions   |  |
|---|--|--|
| Level:  | 3  |  |
| Credit Value:   | 5  |  |
| Calculated GLH:   | 37   |  |
| Learning Outcomes   | Assessment Criteria  |  |
| The learner will:   | The learner can:   |  |
| 1. Understand legislative frameworks that relate to individuals with autistic spectrum conditions                       | <ol> <li>1.1 Outline the current legislative<br/>frameworks that promote the rights<br/>and choices of individuals</li> <li>1.2 Analyse how legislative frameworks<br/>underpin the development of services<br/>for individuals</li> </ol>   |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the main characteristics of<br/>autistic spectrum conditions</li> </ol>                             | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe theories on autistic spectrum condition</li> <li>2.2 Explain the characteristics of autistic spectrum conditions</li> <li>2.3 Describe the sensory and perceptual difficulties commonly experienced by individuals with an autistic spectrum condition</li> <li>2.4 Describe other conditions that may be associated with the autistic spectrum</li> <li>2.5 Describe how language and intellectual abilities vary across the autistic spectrum</li> </ul> |  |
| <ol> <li>Support individuals with autistic spectrum conditions</li> <li>4. Support individuals with autistic</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>3.1 Support an individual to understand the impact of their autistic condition on themselves and others</li> <li>3.2 Encourage an individual to recognise the strengths of their characteristics</li> <li>3.3 Support an individual to develop their personal skills</li> <li>3.4 Support an individual and others to develop strategies for dealing with the impact of an autistic spectrum condition</li> <li>4.1 Identify the preferred methods of</li> </ul>        |  |
| spectrum condition with verbal and<br>non-verbal communication  | communication for an individual  |  |



|   | 4.2 Use the preferred methods of communication to support interactions  |  |
|---|---|--|
|   | with an individual  |  |
|   | 4.3 Explain patterns of behaviour associated with an individual's autistic spectrum condition   |  |
|   | 4.4 Support an individual in ways that recognise the significance and meaning of their behaviour  |  |
| 5. Support individuals with change                  | 5.1 Support an individual with autistic<br>spectrum condition to make transitions   |  |
|   | 5.2 Work with an individual and other to<br>recognise routines that are important to<br>the individual  |  |
|   | 5.3 Support an individual during changes to their routines  |  |
|   | 5.4 Enable an individual to use routines to<br>make sense and order of their daily life   |  |
|   | 5.5 Recognise how to make adaptations to the physical sensory environment to:   |  |
|   | <ul> <li>reduce sensory overload</li> <li>increase sensory simulation</li> </ul>  |  |
|   | 5.6 Work with an individual and others to   |  |
|   | develop strategies that help them<br>manage their physical and sensory<br>environment   |  |
| Additional information about this unit (a           |   |  |
| Legislative frameworks need to include po           | blicy drivers and strategies within own country   |  |
| An <b>individual</b> is someone requiring care or s | support   |  |
| Unit aim(s)   | The purpose of this unit is to develop learners' knowledge, understanding and skills of supporting an individual with autistic spectrum conditions. |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by                | Assessment criteria 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 4.1, 4.2,   |  |
| a sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)        | 4.4, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 5.6 must be assessed in a real work environment.   |  |
|   | This unit must be assessed in accordance with   |  |
|   | Skills for Care and Development's RQF<br>Assessment Principles.   |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit             | N/A   |  |
| and relevant national occupational standards        |   |  |



| Level:   | 3  |
|--|--|
| Credit Value:  | 3  |
| GLH:   | 20   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the different views on the<br/>nature of mental well-being and mental<br/>health and the factors that may<br/>influence both across the life span</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Evaluate two different views on the nature of mental well-being and mental health</li> <li>1.2 Explain the range of factors that may influence mental well-being and mental health problems across the life span, including: <ul> <li>biological factors</li> <li>social factors</li> <li>psychological factors</li> <li>emotional factors</li> </ul> </li> <li>1.3 Explain how risk factors and protective factors influence levels of resilience in individuals and groups in relation to mental well-being and mental health</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Know how to implement an effective<br/>strategy for promoting mental well-<br/>being and mental health with individuals<br/>and groups</li> </ol>                       | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain the steps that an individual may take to promote their mental well-being and mental health</li> <li>2.2 Explain how to support an individual in promoting their mental well-being and mental health</li> <li>2.3 Evaluate a strategy for supporting an individual in promoting their mental well-being and mental health</li> <li>2.4 Describe key aspects of a local, national or international strategy to promote mental well-being and mental health</li> <li>2.5 Evaluate a local, national or international strategy to promote mental well-being and mental health within a group or community</li> <li>2.5 Evaluate a local, national or international strategy to promote mental well-being and mental health within a group or community</li> </ul> |



**Life span:** learners are expected to demonstrate their understanding of how factors arising from individuals' early lives may influence their well-being as adults and the potential impact of levels of well-being in later life. This is in order to promote a holistic and whole-person approach to understanding well-being and mental health.

Risk factors: including inequalities, poor quality social relationships

Protective factors: including socially valued roles, social support and contact

**Individual** refers to someone requiring care or support; it will usually mean the person or people supported by the learner

| Unit aim(s)                             | This unit aims to provide the learner          |
|---|--|
|   | with an understanding of the key               |
|   | concepts of mental wellbeing, mental           |
|   | health and mental health promotion. It         |
|   | focuses on the range of factors that can       |
|   | influence mental wellbeing and how to          |
|   | effectively promote mental wellbeing           |
|   | and mental health with individuals and         |
|   | groups in a variety of contexts, not just      |
|   | specialist mental health services.             |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This unit must be assessed in line with Skills |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | for Health Assessment Principles.              |
| appropriate)                            |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit links to MH14.                       |
| and relevant national occupational      |  |
| standards                               |  |



| Title:   | H/616/5052 Understand mental health problems  |
|--|---|
| Level:   | 3   |
| Credit Value:  | 3   |
| GLH:   | 16  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand the types of mental ill health   | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe the following types of mental ill health according to the psychiatric (DSM/ICD) classification system: <ul> <li>mood disorders</li> <li>personality disorders</li> <li>anxiety disorders</li> <li>psychotic disorders</li> <li>substance-related disorders</li> <li>eating disorders</li> <li>cognitive disorders</li> </ul> </li> <li>1.2 Explain the key strengths and limitations of the psychiatric classification system</li> <li>1.3 Explain alternative frameworks for understanding mental distress</li> <li>1.4 Explain indicators of mental ill health</li> </ul> |
| <ol> <li>Understand the impact of mental ill<br/>health on individuals and others in their<br/>social network</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain how individuals experience discrimination</li> <li>2.2 Explain the effects mental ill health may have on an individual</li> <li>2.3 Explain the effects mental ill health may have on those in the individual's familial, social or work network</li> <li>2.4 Explain how to intervene to promote an individual's mental health and wellbeing</li> </ul>   |

**Individual** refers to someone requiring care or support; it will usually mean the person or people supported by the learner.

Assessment criteria 2.2 and 2.3 should cover:

Effects:

- psychological and emotional impacts
- behaviour



- physical health
- practical and financial impacts
- the impact of using services
- social exclusion
- positive impacts

| Unit aim(s)  | This unit aims to provide the learner with<br>knowledge of the main forms of mental ill<br>health according to the psychiatric<br>classification system. Learners also consider<br>the strengths and limitations of this model<br>and look at alternative frameworks for<br>understanding mental distress. The focus of<br>the unit is on understanding the different<br>ways in which mental ill health may affect<br>the individual and others in their social<br>network. It also considers the benefits of<br>early intervention in promoting mental health<br>and well-being. |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by   | This unit must be assessed in line with Skills   |
| a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)  | for Health Assessment Principles.  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | This unit links to SCDHSC3111 and MH14.  |



| Title:  | Y/616/5503 Support families of individuals with acquired brain injury  |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 2  |
| Credit Value:   | 3  |
| GLH:  | 24   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the importance of working<br/>in a family centred way</li> </ol>            | <ol> <li>1.1 Explain how to best identify the needs<br/>and wishes of the family</li> <li>1.2 Explain the importance of the family's<br/>needs and wishes being fully taken into<br/>consideration</li> </ol>  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the long term effects of<br/>acquired brain injury on the family</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe the physical and psychological changes that may occur for family and friends as a result of caring for an individual with acquired brain injury</li> <li>2.2 Explain the long term consequences for a family who care for an individual with an acquired brain injury, who may be: <ul> <li>minimally responsive</li> <li>severe</li> <li>mild to moderate</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.3 Describe the potential impact on families of: <ul> <li>personality changes in the individual</li> <li>lack of self-awareness in the individual</li> <li>the individual's increased dependence upon them</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| 3. Apply legislation that is relevant to carers of individuals with acquired brain injury       | <ul> <li>3.1 Identify the appropriate legislation and policy specific to carers</li> <li>3.2 Apply the key principles in legislation regarding carers of individuals with acquired brain injury to your own practice</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Support families and friends who hold<br/>the primary caring role</li> </ol>           | <ul> <li>4.1 Communicate with the family in order to identify what supports they may need</li> <li>4.2 Demonstrate active listening and communication skills when supporting primary carer(s)</li> </ul>   |



|    |  | 4.3 | Contribute to the assessment of the       |
|----|--|-----|---|
|    |  |     | primary carer's needs and wishes          |
|    |  | 4.4 | Identify any additional support needs     |
|    |  |     | with the primary carer(s)                 |
|    |  | 4.5 | Record and report additional needs of     |
|    |  |     | primary carers in line with               |
|    |  |     | organisational and policy requirements    |
| 5. | Know the support available from <b>other</b> | 5.1 | Explain the roles and responsibilities of |
|    | professionals and agencies                   |     | the different professionals and agencies  |
|    |  |     | who provide support to families of an     |
|    |  |     | individual with an acquired brain injury  |
|    |  | 5.2 | Explain when referrals should be made     |
|    |  |     | to other professionals or agencies        |
|    |  |     |   |
|    |  |     |   |

**Family centred way** is where the family are put at the centre of the work. Advice and information are sought from them. The learner works in partnership with them and does not intrude in the family's contribution with the individual.

The **individual** is the person requiring support. An advocate may need to act on behalf of an individual.

#### Personality changes

- Irritability
- Disinhibited behaviour
- Frustration
- Loss of social skills
- Lack of self-awareness

Self-awareness - ability to understand the impact of behaviour on others

#### **Primary carer(s)**

- Spouse/Partner
- Parents
- Siblings
- Children
- Grandparents
- Friends or identified next of kin outside of immediate family but who are primary carers

#### Other professionals or Agencies may include

- Carers' organisations
- Social Workers
- GPs
- Supervisor
- Advocate



| Comerce (formilier and one                      |   |
|---|---|
| Carers/family members                           |   |
| Colleagues                                      |   |
| Unit aim(s)                                     | This unit is aimed at those whose role<br>involves supporting families of people with<br>an acquired brain injury. It covers the impact |
|   | on the family/carers and it addresses the   |
|   | importance of supporting the family and   |
|   | working in partnership with them in   |
|   | addressing their needs.   |
| Assessment requirements specified by            | This qualification must be assessed in  |
| a sector or regulatory body (if                 | accordance with the Assessment Principles   |
| appropriate)                                    | developed by Skills for Care and  |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual  |
|   | requirements.   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit         | N/A   |
| and relevant national occupational<br>standards |   |



| Title:  | K/616/5439 Understand the impact of Acquired Brain Injury on individuals  |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 2   |
| Credit Value:   | 3   |
| GLH:  | 25  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand acquired brain injury</li> <li>Understand the effects of Acquired Brain</li> </ol>                          | <ul><li>1.1 Describe Acquired Brain Injury</li><li>1.2 Identify causes of Acquired Brain Injury</li><li>2.1 Identify initial effects of Acquired Brain</li></ul>  |
| Injury on individuals   | Injury on an <b>individual</b><br>2.2 Identify long term effects of Acquired<br>Brain Injury on an individual   |
| 3. Understand the communication needs of<br>an individual with Acquired Brain Injury  | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain what is meant by the terms <ul> <li>dysphasia</li> <li>dysarthria</li> </ul> </li> <li>3.2 Describe the communication <ul> <li>challenges</li> <li>presented by</li> <li>dysphasia</li> <li>dysarthria</li> </ul> </li> <li>3.3 Identify communication strategies for supporting an individual with Acquired Brain Injury</li> </ul>   |
| <ol> <li>Understand the effects that Acquired<br/>Brain Injury may have on an individual's<br/>personality</li> </ol>           | <ul> <li>4.1 Describe changes in an individual's personality that may occur as a result of Acquired Brain Injury</li> <li>4.2 Describe the effects that the individual's personality changes may have on those providing support</li> </ul>   |
| 5. Understand the impact of challenging<br>behaviour on an individual with Acquired<br>Brain Injury and those providing support | <ul> <li>5.1 Describe behaviours which may be considered challenging</li> <li>5.2 State what to do to avoid confrontation with someone who is distressed</li> <li>5.3 Describe how challenging behaviour impacts on own feelings and attitudes</li> <li>5.4 Identify what <b>support</b> is available to respond to <b>challenging behaviour</b></li> <li>5.5 Describe how to report challenging behaviour</li> </ul> |



#### **Acquired Brain Injury**

- Traumatic brain injury
- Mild/moderate brain injury
- Severe brain injury

The **individual** is the person requiring support. An advocate may need to act on behalf of an individual.

**Functional** relates to the individual's ability to carry out day to day tasks, i.e. dressing, washing, cooking. IT does not solely mean the physical ability but also can mean concentration, motivation for doing tasks

#### Communication needs can include

- Word-finding
- Indistinct speech

#### Those providing support may include

- Family
- Friends
- Care Workers
- Practitioners
- Other Professionals

#### Self-Awareness: ability to understand the impact of behaviour on others

#### Challenging behaviour could include

- Physical violence
- Threatening language
- Sexual inhibitions
- Non-compliance
- Aggressive outbursts
- Self-injury, including ingesting or inhaling foreign bodies
- Property destruction
- Socially inappropriate behaviour

| Unit aim(s)                          | The aim of the unit is to gain knowledge to  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
|                                      | support people who have an Acquired Brain    |
|                                      | Injury. It covers both the impact on the     |
|                                      | individual who has the Acquired Brain Injury |
|                                      | and their careers.                           |
| Assessment requirements specified by | This qualification must be assessed in       |
| a sector or regulatory body (if      | accordance with the Assessment Principles    |
| appropriate)                         | developed by Skills for Care and             |
|                                      | Development to complement Ofqual             |
|                                      | requirements.                                |



| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational | N/A |
|---|-----|
| standards   |     |



| Title:   | K/618/5089 Understand how to<br>support individuals during the last days<br>of life   |
|--|---|
| Level:   | 3   |
| Credit Value:  | 5   |
| GLH:   | 32  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand common features of support during the last days of life  | <ol> <li>1.1 Describe the common indications that<br/>an individual is approaching death</li> <li>1.2 Describe the circumstances when life-<br/>prolonging treatment can be stopped or<br/>withheld</li> <li>1.3 Analyse the importance of an advance<br/>care plan in the last days of life</li> <li>1.4 Identify the signs that death has<br/>occurred</li> </ol>   |
| 2. Understand the impact of the last days of life on the <b>individual</b> and <b>others</b>   | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe the possible psychological aspects of the dying phase for the individual and others</li> <li>2.2 Explain the impact of the last days of life on the relationships between individuals and others</li> <li>2.3 Outline the possible changing needs of the individual during the last days of life</li> </ul>   |
| 3. Know how to support individuals and others during the last days of life 4. Use to be defined as the second s | <ul> <li>3.1 Describe a range of ways to enhance<br/>an individual's wellbeing during the last<br/>days of life</li> <li>3.2 Explain the importance of working in<br/>partnership with key people to support<br/>the individual's wellbeing during the last<br/>days of life</li> <li>3.3 Describe how to use an integrated care<br/>pathway according to agreed ways of<br/>working</li> <li>3.4 Define key information about the<br/>process following death that should be<br/>made available to appropriate people<br/>according to agreed ways of working</li> </ul> |
| 4. Understand the actions to be taken following an individual's death  | 4.1 Explain national guidelines, local policies<br>and procedures relating to care after<br>death   |



|  | 4.2 Explain the importance of being           |
|--|---|
|  | knowledgeable about an individual's           |
|  | wishes for their after-death care             |
|  | 4.3 Explain the importance of acting in       |
|  | ways that respect the individual's            |
|  | wishes immediately after death                |
|  | 4.4 Describe agreed ways of working           |
|  | relating to prevention and control of         |
|  | infection when caring for and                 |
|  | transferring a deceased person                |
|  | 4.5 Describe ways to support others           |
|  | immediately following the death of a          |
|  | close relative or friend                      |
| 5. Know how to manage own feelings in      | 5.1 Define possible impact of an individual's |
| relation to an individual's dying or death | death on own feelings                         |
|  | 5.2 Identify available support systems to     |
|  | manage own feelings in relation to an         |
|  | individual's death                            |
|  |   |

**Individual** is the person receiving support or care in the work setting.

**Others** may include: partner, family, friends, neighbours, care worker, colleague, manager, social worker, occupational therapist, GP, speech & language therapist, physiotherapist, pharmacist, nurse, psychologist, independent mental capacity advocate, community psychiatric nurse, clinical nurse specialist.

**Range of ways** may include: appropriate comfort measures in the final hours of life, environmental factors, non-medical interventions, use of equipment and aids, alternative therapies.

Agreed ways of working include policies and procedures where these exist.

| Unit aim(s)                          | This unit provides the learner with an        |
|--------------------------------------|---|
|                                      | understanding of how to support individuals   |
|                                      | during the last days of life. It looks at the |
|                                      | signs which indicate death is approaching     |
|                                      | and the impact that death has on others. It   |
|                                      | examines the actions that need to be taken    |
|                                      | following death and the impact that death     |
|                                      | can have on the carer.                        |
| Assessment requirements specified by | This qualification must be assessed in        |
| a sector or regulatory body (if      | accordance with the Assessment Principles     |
| appropriate)                         | developed by Skills for Care and              |



|  | Development to complement Ofqual requirements. |
|--|--|
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | N/A  |



| Title:  | Y/616/5386 Understand how to provide support in end of life care  |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 4   |
| GLH:  | 33  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand current approaches to end of life care  | <ul> <li>1.1 Analyse the impact of national and local drivers on current approaches to end of life care</li> <li>1.2 Evaluate how tools for end of life care can support the individual and others</li> <li>1.3 Analyse the stages of the local end of life care pathway</li> </ul>   |
| 2. Understand an individual's response to their anticipated death   | <ul> <li>2.1 Evaluate models of loss and grief</li> <li>2.2 Describe how to support the individual throughout each stage of grief</li> <li>2.3 Explain the need to explore with each individual their own specific areas of concern as they face death</li> <li>2.4 Describe how an individual's awareness of spirituality may change as they approach end of life</li> </ul>   |
| <ol> <li>Understand factors regarding<br/>communication for those involved in end<br/>of life care</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain the principles of effective listening and information giving</li> <li>3.2 Explain how personal experiences of death and dying may affect capacity to listen and respond appropriately</li> <li>3.3 Explain the internal and external coping strategies of individuals and others when facing death and dying</li> <li>3.4 Explain the importance of ensuring effective channels of communication are in place with others</li> </ul> |
| 4. Understand how to support those involved in end of life care situations                                    | <ul> <li>4.1 Describe possible emotional effects on staff working in end of life care situations</li> <li>4.2 Evaluate sources of support for staff providing end of life care</li> </ul>   |



|  | <ul> <li>4.3 Identify areas in group care situations<br/>where others may need support in end<br/>of life care situations</li> <li>4.4 Outline sources of emotional support for<br/>others in end of life care situations</li> </ul> |  |
|--|--|--|
| 5. Understand how <b>symptoms</b> might be identified in end of life care      | 5.1 Identify symptoms that may be related<br>to an individual's condition, pre-existing<br>conditions and treatment itself   |  |
|  | 5.2 Describe how symptoms can cause an<br>individual and others distress and<br>discomfort   |  |
|  | 5.3 Describe signs of approaching death  |  |
|  | 5.4 Evaluate techniques for relieving<br>symptoms  |  |
| 6. Understand advance care planning  | 6.1 Explain the difference between a care<br>or support plan and an advance care<br>plan   |  |
|  | 6.2 Identify where to find additional  |  |
|  | information about advance care   |  |
|  | planning   |  |
|  | 6.3 Describe own role in advance care  |  |
|  | planning   |  |
|  | 6.4 Explain why, with their consent, it is   |  |
|  | important to pass on information about   |  |
|  | the individual's wishes, needs, and  |  |
|  | preferences for their end of life care   |  |
| Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria) |  |  |
| Examples of tools for end of life care:  |  |  |
| Gold Standards Framework or equivalent   |  |  |
| Preferred priorities of care   |  |  |
| Advance care plan approaches   |  |  |
| Welsh integrated care pathway  |  |  |
| National end of life strategy 'Six steps'                                      |  |  |
| Individual - is the person receiving support or care in the work setting       |  |  |
| Others may include:  |  |  |
| Partner  |  |  |
| • Family   |  |  |
| • Friends  |  |  |
| Neighbours   |  |  |
| Care Worker  |  |  |
| Colleague  |  |  |
| Manager  |  |  |

• Social Worker



| <ul> <li>Occupational Therapist</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Speech and Language Therapist</li> <li>Physiotherapist</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Psychologist</li> <li>Independent Mental Capacity Advocate</li> <li>Community Psychiatric Nurse</li> <li>Clinical nurse specialists</li> </ul> |  |
|--|--|
| Unit aim(s)  | The purpose of this unit is to assess the<br>learner's knowledge and understanding<br>surrounding the provision of support in end<br>of life care. |
| Assessment requirements specified by   | This qualification must be assessed in   |
| a sector or regulatory body (if  | accordance with the Assessment Principles  |
| appropriate)   | developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual   |
|  | requirements.  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit  | N/A  |
| and relevant national occupational   |  |
| standards  |  |



| Title:  | K/650/0876 Understand the effects of ageing in activity provision   |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| Level:  | 2   |  |  |
| Credit Value:   | 2   |  |  |
| Calculated GLH:   | 17  |  |  |
| Learning Outcomes   | Assessment Criteria   |  |  |
| The learner will:   | The learner can:  |  |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the effects of human ageing</li> <li>Understand the impact of age-related<br/>changes and activity</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe the different physiological disorders that are associated with ageing</li> <li>1.2 Describe the different psychological effects of the ageing process</li> <li>1.3 Describe the different mental health disorders associated with the ageing process</li> <li>1.4 Describe the influences that culture has on perceptions of ageing</li> <li>2.1 Explain how different age-related changes can impact on an individual's engagement in activity</li> <li>2.2 Explain how engagement in activities can affect wellbeing in relation to ageing</li> <li>2.3 Explain the ways in which an activity provider can address the challenges associated with age-related changes and engagement in activity</li> </ul> |  |  |
| Additional information about this unit (an  | mplification for assessment criteria)   |  |  |
| -   | ······································  |  |  |
| N/A   |   |  |  |
| Unit aim(s)   | This unit assesses the learner's  |  |  |
|   | understanding of the effects of ageing in   |  |  |
|   | relation to activity provision.   |  |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by  | This qualification must be assessed in  |  |  |
| a sector or regulatory body (if   | accordance with the Assessment Principles   |  |  |
| appropriate)  | developed by Skills for Care and  |  |  |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual  |  |  |
|   | requirements.   |  |  |



| Details of the relationship of the unit | N/A |
|---|-----|
| and relevant national occupational      |     |
| standards                               |     |



| Title:   | F/618/5146 Understand the factors<br>affecting older people  |
|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |
| Credit Value:  | 3  |
| GLH:   | 17   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the impact of the ageing<br/>process on <b>older people</b></li> </ol>                 | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe changes that may come with ageing</li> <li>1.2 Explain how the experience of the ageing process is unique to everyone</li> <li>1.3 Analyse the potential impact of <b>factors</b> associated with ageing Describe how a positive approach to ageing can contribute to the health and well-being of an individual</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Understand attitudes of society to older people</li> </ol>  | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe the contributions to society made by older people</li> <li>2.2 Explain what is meant by age discrimination</li> <li>2.3 Explain how societal attitudes and beliefs impact on older people</li> <li>2.4 Describe strategies that can be used to challenge stereotypes and discriminatory attitudes towards older people</li> </ul>                                      |
| <ol> <li>Understand the importance of using<br/>person centred approaches with older<br/>people</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>3.1 Describe how the effects of ageing can affect the day to day life of older people</li> <li>3.2 Describe ways of using a person-centred approach to enable older people to make positive contributions to their community</li> <li>3.3 Explain the importance of social inclusion for older people</li> <li>3.4 Outline barriers to social inclusion for older people</li> </ul> |
| 4. Understand the importance of independence for older people  | <ul> <li>4.1 Explain how independence can contribute to the wellbeing of older people</li> <li>4.2 Describe how to support older people to maintain independence</li> </ul>  |



|  | Describe how older people can be in<br>control of decision making about their<br>care and support needs<br>Explain how to encourage older people |
|--|--|
|  | to take positive risks   |
|  |  |

Older people are defined as those who are over 50.

## Factors associated with ageing to include:

- Physical
- Emotional
- Social
- Cognitive
- Environmental
- Financial /Economic

The **individual** is the person requiring care or support.

Age discrimination may include any legal definition where one exists

### Day to day life may include:

- Relationships
- family role
- social status
- access to community facilities
- personal care
- independence
- lack of social support
- lack of material well being
- education opportunities
- housing
- employment
- access to social and leisure activities
- health care
- sensory loss

**Person centred approach** is one that fully recognises the uniqueness of the individual and establish this as the basis for planning and delivery of care and support. The approach promotes dignity for older people.

| Unit aim(s) | This unit develops the learner's             |  |
|-------------|--|--|
|             | understanding of the impact of ageing, the   |  |
|             | range of factors that impact on older people |  |
|             | and the role played by society. The unit     |  |
|             | promotes a person-centred approach as an     |  |



|   | underpinning value in working with older  |
|---|---|
|   | people.                                   |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in    |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | accordance with the Assessment Principles |
| appropriate)                            | developed by Skills for Care and          |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual          |
|   | requirements.                             |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | N/A                                       |
| and relevant national occupational      |   |
| standards                               |   |



| Title:   | M/650/0878 Diabetes Awareness  |  |
|--|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |  |
| Credit Value:  | 7  |  |
| Calculated GLH:  | 46   |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand diabetes and the associated implications</li> </ol>  | <ul> <li>1.1 Define diabetes</li> <li>1.2 Identify prevalence rates for different types of diabetes</li> <li>1.3 Describe possible long-term complications to health as a result of having diabetes</li> <li>1.4 Explain what is meant by the term hyperglycaemia</li> <li>1.5 Explain the procedure for referring an individual with diabetes to <b>others</b></li> </ul>   |  |
| <ol> <li>Know the most common types of<br/>diabetes and their causes</li> </ol>  | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe key features of Type 1<br/>diabetes</li> <li>2.2 Describe key features of Type 2<br/>diabetes</li> <li>2.3 List the most causes of diabetes: <ul> <li>Type 1</li> <li>Type 2</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.4 Describe the likely signs and symptoms</li> <li>2.5 Outline contributing risk factors that<br/>may lead to the development of Type 2<br/>diabetes</li> </ul>   |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand how to implement a person-<br/>centred approach when supporting<br/>individuals with diabetes</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>3.1 Define person-centred support in the treatment of diabetes</li> <li>3.2 Explain the importance of using individualised care plans to support individuals</li> <li>3.3 Explain the care pathway for the individual with newly diagnosed Type 2 diabetes</li> <li>3.4 Explain what self-care skills are</li> <li>3.5 Explain how to work with an individual, and or their carer, to optimise self-care skills</li> <li>3.6 Explain the importance of supporting individuals to make informed decisions</li> </ul> |  |



| <ul> <li>4. Understand how to implement a person-<br/>centred approach when supporting<br/>individuals with diabetes</li> <li>4.1 Explain the principles of maintaining a<br/>balanced diet</li> <li>4.2 Analyse how different carbohydrates<br/>affect blood glucose level</li> <li>4.3 Explain the role of the nutritional pan<br/>and how to report any related problems</li> <li>5. Understand the nutritional needs of<br/>individuals with diabetes</li> <li>5.1 Describe how different individuals<br/>may experience living with diabetes</li> <li>5.2 Explain the impact that the atitudes<br/>and behaviours of others may have on<br/>an individual</li> <li>5.3 Explain how an individual can manage<br/>their diabetes through different aspects<br/>of their lifestyle</li> <li>6. Understand the importance of<br/>monitoring diabetes</li> <li>6.1 Explain the importance of accurately<br/>measuring blood pressure</li> <li>6.2 Explain the purpose of accurately<br/>measuring blood pressure</li> <li>6.3 Explain the purpose of accurate blood<br/>glucose monitoring</li> <li>6.4 State the normal blood glucose range</li> <li>6.5 Explain the purpose of accurate urine<br/>monitoring</li> <li>6.6 Describe the annual review checks<br/>needed to screen for long term<br/>complications</li> <li>7.1 Explain the links between diabetes<br/>and other conditions</li> <li>7.1 Explain the links between diabetes</li> <li>9.2 Explain the links between diabetes</li> <li>9.2 Explain the links between diabetes</li> <li>9.1 Explain the links between diabetes</li> <li>9.2 Care workers</li> <li>9.2 Colleagues</li> <li>9.4 Managers</li> <li>9.4 Managers</li> <li>9.4 Managers</li> <li>9.4 Managers</li> <li>9.4 Pharmacist</li> <li>9.4 Nurse</li> <li>9.4 Detext Specialist Nurse</li> <li>9.4 Advocate</li> <li>9.5 Support groups</li> </ul> |     |  |        |   |
|--|-----|--|--------|---|
| affect blood glucose level         4.3       Explain the role of the nutritional plan<br>and how to report any related problems         5.       Understand the nutritional needs of<br>individuals with diabetes         5.       Understand the nutritional needs of<br>individuals with diabetes         5.       Understand the importance of<br>monitoring diabetes         6.       Understand the importance of<br>monitoring diabetes         7.       Understand the links between diabetes<br>and other conditions         7.       Understand the links between diabetes<br>and other conditions         7.       Understand the links between diabetes<br>and other conditions         7.1       Explain the links between diabetes and:<br>• Dementia<br>• Glaucoma<br>• Depression<br>• Pregnancy         Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)   | 4.  | centred approach when supporting         | 4.1    |   |
| and how to report any related problems         5.       Understand the nutritional needs of individuals with diabetes         individuals with diabetes       5.1       Describe how different individuals may experience living with diabetes         5.2       Explain the impact that the attitudes and behaviours of others may have on an individual       5.3       Explain the importance of accurately measuring blood pressure         6.       Understand the importance of monitoring diabetes       6.1       Explain the importance of accurately measuring blood pressure         6.2       Identify the normal parameters for blood pressure       6.2       Explain the purpose of accurate blood glucose monitoring         6.4       State the normal blood glucose range       6.5       Explain the purpose of accurate urine monitoring         6.6       Describe the annual review checks needed to screen for long term complications       7.1       Explain the links between diabetes and: Dementia         and other conditions       7.1       Explain the links between diabetes and: Dementia       Glaucoma         and other conditions       7.1       Explain the instent criteria)         Others may include:       Care workers       Glaucoma         Colleagues       GP       Pharmacist         Managers       GP       Pharmacist         Nurse       Diebetes Care Advisors       Advocate   |     | individuals with diabetes                | 4.2    |   |
| individuals with diabetes       may experience living with diabetes         5.2       Explain the impact that the attitudes         and behaviours of others may have on       an individual         5.3       Explain the importance of         monitoring diabetes       6.1         Explain the importance of       6.1         monitoring diabetes       6.2         Identify the normal parameters for         blood pressure         6.2       Identify the normal parameters for         blood pressure         6.3       Explain the purpose of accurate blood glucose range         6.4       State the normal parameters for         blood pressure       6.3         6.5       Explain the purpose of accurate blood glucose range         6.6       Describe the annual review checks         needed to screen for long term       complications         7.1       Explain the links between diabetes         and other conditions       7.1         7.1       Explain the links between diabetes         and other conditions       7.1         7.2       Understand the links between diabetes         and other conditions       7.1         7.1       Explain the links between diabetes and:         • Dementia       Gl  |     |  | 4.3    | •   |
| <ul> <li>5.2 Explain the impact that the attitudes and behaviours of others may have on an individual</li> <li>5.3 Explain how an individual can manage their diabetes through different aspects of their lifestyle</li> <li>6. Understand the importance of monitoring diabetes</li> <li>6.1 Explain the importance of accurately measuring blood pressure</li> <li>6.2 Identify the normal parameters for blood pressure</li> <li>6.3 Explain the purpose of accurate blood glucose monitoring</li> <li>6.4 State the normal blood glucose range</li> <li>6.5 Explain the purpose of accurate urine monitoring</li> <li>6.6 Describe the annual review checks needed to screen for long term complications</li> <li>7. Understand the links between diabetes and other conditions</li> <li>7.1 Explain the links between diabetes and beyression ended to screen for long term complications</li> <li>7.1 Explain the links between diabetes and: <ul> <li>Glaucoma</li> <li>Degression</li> <li>Pregnancy</li> </ul> </li> <li>Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)</li> <li>Others may include: <ul> <li>Care workers</li> <li>Golleagues</li> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | 5.  | Understand the nutritional needs of      | 5.1    | Describe how different individuals  |
| <ul> <li>5.3 Explain how an individual can manage their diabetes through different aspects of their lifestyle</li> <li>6. Understand the importance of monitoring diabetes</li> <li>6.1 Explain the importance of accurately measuring blood pressure</li> <li>6.2 Identify the normal parameters for blood pressure</li> <li>6.3 Explain the purpose of accurate blood glucose range</li> <li>6.4 State the normal blood glucose range</li> <li>6.5 Explain the purpose of accurate urine monitoring</li> <li>6.6 Describe the annual review checks needed to screen for long term complications</li> <li>7.1 Understand the links between diabetes and: <ul> <li>Dementia</li> <li>Glaucoma</li> <li>Depression</li> <li>Pregnancy</li> </ul> </li> <li>Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)</li> <li>Others may include: <ul> <li>Care workers</li> <li>Colleagues</li> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |     | individuals with diabetes                | 5.2    | Explain the impact that the attitudes<br>and behaviours of others may have on |
| monitoring diabetes       measuring blood pressure         6.2       Identify the normal parameters for blood pressure         6.3       Explain the purpose of accurate blood glucose monitoring         6.4       State the normal blood glucose range         6.5       Explain the purpose of accurate urine monitoring         6.6       Describe the annual review checks needed to screen for long term complications         7.       Understand the links between diabetes and:         and other conditions       7.1         Explain the links between diabetes and:       • Dementia         • Glaucoma       • Depression         • Depression       • Pregnancy         Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)         Others may include:       • Care workers         • Colleagues       • Managers         • GP       Pharmacist         • Nurse       • Detician         • Podiatrist       • Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse         • Diabetes Care Advisors       • Advocate  |     |  | 5.3    | Explain how an individual can manage their diabetes through different aspects |
| <ul> <li>6.2 Identify the normal parameters for blood pressure</li> <li>6.3 Explain the purpose of accurate blood glucose monitoring</li> <li>6.4 State the normal blood glucose range</li> <li>6.5 Explain the purpose of accurate urine monitoring</li> <li>6.6 Describe the annual review checks needed to screen for long term complications</li> <li>7.1 Explain the links between diabetes and: <ul> <li>Dementia</li> <li>Glaucoma</li> <li>Depression</li> <li>Pregnancy</li> </ul> </li> <li>Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)</li> <li>Others may include: <ul> <li>Care workers</li> <li>Colleagues</li> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  | 6.  | •  | 6.1    |   |
| <ul> <li>6.3 Explain the purpose of accurate blood glucose monitoring</li> <li>6.4 State the normal blood glucose range</li> <li>6.5 Explain the purpose of accurate urine monitoring</li> <li>6.6 Describe the annual review checks needed to screen for long term complications</li> <li>7. Understand the links between diabetes and other conditions</li> <li>7.1 Explain the links between diabetes and: <ul> <li>Dementia</li> <li>Glaucoma</li> <li>Depression</li> <li>Pregnancy</li> </ul> </li> <li>Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)</li> <li>Others may include: <ul> <li>Care workers</li> <li>Colleagues</li> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |     | monitoring diabetes                      | 6.2    | Identify the normal parameters for  |
| <ul> <li>6.4 State the normal blood glucose range</li> <li>6.5 Explain the purpose of accurate urine monitoring</li> <li>6.6 Describe the annual review checks needed to screen for long term complications</li> <li>7.1 Explain the links between diabetes and: <ul> <li>Dementia</li> <li>Glaucoma</li> <li>Depression</li> <li>Pregnancy</li> </ul> </li> <li>Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)</li> <li>Others may include: <ul> <li>Care workers</li> <li>Colleagues</li> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Distician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul> </li> </ul>   |     |  | 6.3    | Explain the purpose of accurate blood   |
| <ul> <li>6.5 Explain the purpose of accurate urine monitoring</li> <li>6.6 Describe the annual review checks needed to screen for long term complications</li> <li>7.1 Explain the links between diabetes and other conditions</li> <li>7.1 Explain the links between diabetes and:         <ul> <li>Dementia</li> <li>Glaucoma</li> <li>Depression</li> <li>Pregnancy</li> </ul> </li> <li>Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)</li> <li>Others may include:         <ul> <li>Care workers</li> <li>Colleagues</li> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |     |  | 6.4    |   |
| 6.6       Describe the annual review checks needed to screen for long term complications         7.       Understand the links between diabetes and other conditions         7.       Understand the links between diabetes and:         and other conditions       7.1         Explain the links between diabetes and:       • Dementia         • Glaucoma       • Depression         • Depression       • Pregnancy         Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)         Others may include:         • Care workers         • Colleagues         • Managers         • GP         • Pharmacist         • Nurse         • Dietician         • Podiatrist         • Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse         • Diabetes Care Advisors         • Advocate   |     |  |        | Explain the purpose of accurate urine   |
| needed to screen for long term complications         7. Understand the links between diabetes and other conditions         and other conditions         7.1 Explain the links between diabetes and: <ul> <li>Dementia</li> <li>Glaucoma</li> <li>Depression</li> <li>Pregnancy</li> </ul> Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)         Others may include:         Care workers         Colleagues         Managers         GP         Pharmacist         Nurse         Dietician         Podiatrist         Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse         Diabetes Care Advisors         Advocate   |     |  | 66     | 5   |
| complications         7. Understand the links between diabetes and other conditions         and other conditions         9. Dementia         • Glaucoma         • Depression         • Pregnancy    Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)          Others may include:         • Care workers         • Colleagues         • Managers         • GP         • Pharmacist         • Nurse         • Dietician         • Podiatrist         • Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse         • Diabetes Care Advisors         • Advocate  |     |  | 0.0    |   |
| <ul> <li>7. Understand the links between diabetes and other conditions</li> <li>7.1 Explain the links between diabetes and: <ul> <li>Dementia</li> <li>Glaucoma</li> <li>Depression</li> <li>Pregnancy</li> </ul> </li> <li>Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)</li> <li>Others may include: <ul> <li>Care workers</li> <li>Colleagues</li> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |     |  |        | _   |
| <ul> <li>Glaucoma</li> <li>Depression</li> <li>Pregnancy</li> </ul> Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria) Others may include: <ul> <li>Care workers</li> <li>Colleagues</li> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul>   | 7.  |  | 7.1    | •   |
| <ul> <li>Depression <ul> <li>Pregnancy</li> </ul> </li> <li>Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)</li> </ul> <li>Others may include: <ul> <li>Care workers</li> <li>Colleagues</li> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul> </li>  |     | and other conditions                     |        |   |
| <ul> <li>Pregnancy</li> <li>Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)</li> <li>Others may include: <ul> <li>Care workers</li> <li>Colleagues</li> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |     |  |        |   |
| Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria) Others may include:  Care workers Colleagues Managers Managers GP Pharmacist Nurse Dietician Podiatrist Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse Diabetes Care Advisors Advocate   |     |  |        | -   |
| Others may include:<br>• Care workers<br>• Colleagues<br>• Managers<br>• GP<br>• Pharmacist<br>• Nurse<br>• Dietician<br>• Podiatrist<br>• Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse<br>• Diabetes Care Advisors<br>• Advocate   |     |  |        | • Freghancy   |
| <ul> <li>Care workers</li> <li>Colleagues</li> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul>  | Add | litional information about this unit (ar | nplifi | cation for assessment criteria)   |
| <ul> <li>Care workers</li> <li>Colleagues</li> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul>  | Oth | ners may include:                        |        |   |
| <ul> <li>Managers</li> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul>  |     |  |        |   |
| <ul> <li>GP</li> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul>  | • ( | Colleagues                               |        |   |
| <ul> <li>Pharmacist</li> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul>  | •   | Managers                                 |        |   |
| <ul> <li>Nurse</li> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul>  |     | -  |        |   |
| <ul> <li>Dietician</li> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul>   |     |  |        |   |
| <ul> <li>Podiatrist</li> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul>  |     |  |        |   |
| <ul> <li>Community Diabetes Specialist Nurse</li> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul>  |     |  |        |   |
| <ul> <li>Diabetes Care Advisors</li> <li>Advocate</li> </ul>   |     |  |        |   |
| Advocate   |     |  |        |   |
|  |     |  |        |   |
|  | • 9 | Support groups                           |        |   |



**Person-centred** - this is a way of working which aims to put the person at the centre of the care situation, taking into account their individuality, wishes and preferences

Individuals - are people requiring care or support

**Different carbohydrates** - carbohydrates act as the body's main source of energy. They are essential sugars that are broken down by the body during digestion. There are two categories of carbohydrates, and three types within those categories: Simple – simple carbohydrates are also known as simple sugars. These simple carbs give the body a quick energy boost. Natural sugar from fruit, table sugar and sugar from milk all

fall into this category.

Complex – Fibre and starch are complex carbs that take longer for the body to digest. Vegetables, breads, rice, whole grains and pasta are examples of complex carbohydrates

**Different individual**s – depending on age, type of diabetes and level of ability and disability

**Experience** living – to include the impact on the individual's physical, physiological and mental well-being

| Unit aim(s)  | This unit will enable learners to explore what<br>diabetes is, the different types of diabetes<br>and how a person-centred approach may<br>support an individual to manage diabetes. |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.         |  |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | N/A  |  |  |



| Title:   | T/618/5130 Stroke awareness   |  |
|--|---|--|
| Level:   | 2   |  |
| Credit Value:  | 4   |  |
| GLH:   | 28  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| 1. Understand what a stroke is   | <ol> <li>1.1 Define the term stroke</li> <li>1.2 Identify the changes in the brain<br/>associated with a stroke (Cerebral<br/>Vascular Accident)</li> <li>1.3 Explain other conditions that may be<br/>mistaken for stroke</li> <li>1.4 Explain the differences between stroke<br/>and a Transient Ischaemic Attack (TIA)</li> </ol>  |  |
| 2. Know how to recognise stroke  | <ul> <li>2.1 Identify the signs and symptoms of stroke</li> <li>2.2 Identify the key stages of stroke</li> <li>2.3 Describe the <b>assessment tests</b> that are available to enable listing of the signs and symptoms</li> <li>2.4 Describe the potential changes that an individual may experience as a result of stroke</li> </ul> |  |
| 3. Understand the management of risk factors for stroke  | <ul> <li>3.1 Identify the common risk factors for stroke</li> <li>3.2 Describe how risk factors may vary in different settings</li> <li>3.3 Define the steps that can be taken to reduce the risk of stroke and subsequent stroke</li> </ul>  |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the importance of<br/>emergency response and treatment for<br/>stroke</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>4.1 Describe why stroke is a medical emergency</li> <li>4.2 Describe the actions to be taken in response to an emergency stroke incident in line with agreed ways of working</li> <li>4.3 Identify the key stages of stroke</li> <li>4.4 Identify the correct early positioning for airway management</li> </ul>             |  |



|    |                                     | 4.5 | Identify the information that needs to   |
|----|-------------------------------------|-----|--|
|    |                                     |     | be included in reporting relevant and    |
|    |                                     |     | accurate history of the incident         |
| 5. | Understand the management of stroke | 5.1 | Describe why effective stroke care is    |
|    |                                     |     | important to the management of stroke    |
|    |                                     | 5.2 | Identify agencies or resources available |
|    |                                     |     | to individuals and others affected by    |
|    |                                     |     | stroke                                   |
|    |                                     |     |  |

**Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)** refers to FAST – Face, Arms, Speech, Time

## Common risk factors includes:

- Genetic
- Lifestyle
- Ethnicity
- Age
- Other medical conditions

**Settings** – this may vary according to the health and social care setting of the individual e.g. residential or domiciliary environment

An **individual** is someone accessing care or support

**Others** may include:

- Family members
- Friends
- Advocates
- Other professionals
- Carers

| Unit aim(s)                             | The aim of this unit is to provide an           |
|---|---|
|   | understanding of the different types of         |
|   | stroke, signs and symptoms and effects on       |
|   | individuals. It will also help learners to gain |
|   | knowledge of the response needed in the         |
|   | event of an emergency stroke incident,          |
|   | managing stroke and the support available       |
|   | following a stroke.                             |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in          |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | accordance with the Assessment Principles       |
| appropriate)                            | developed by Skills for Care and                |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual                |
|   | requirements.                                   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | N/A   |
| and relevant national occupational      |   |
| standards                               |   |



| Title:   | F/650/0873 Understand Stroke Care<br>Management  |
|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |
| Credit Value:  | 6  |
| Calculated GLH:  | 37   |
| Learning Outcomes  | Assessment Criteria  |
| The learner will:  | The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand how to support individuals<br/>to manage stroke according to<br/>legislation, policy and guidance</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Summarise current legislation, local policy and guidance related to supporting individuals who have had a stroke</li> <li>1.2 Explain what current best practice is in the initial stages of stroke care management</li> <li>1.3 Explain how an individual could be encouraged to review their lifestyle and promote their own health and wellbeing</li> <li>1.4 Describe the potential implications of mental capacity following a stroke</li> </ul> |
| 2. Understand specific communication<br>factors affecting individuals following a<br>stroke                                      | <ul> <li>2.1 Evaluate the effects of stroke on the brain in relation to the ability to communicate</li> </ul>  |
|  | 2.2 Describe a range of common<br>communication methods and <b>aids</b> to<br>support individuals affected by a stroke   |
|  | 2.3 Analyse methods of facilitating<br>communication using supported<br>conversation techniques  |
|  | 2.4 Identify any pre-existing illnesses or<br>disabilities that need to be taken into<br>account when addressing<br>communication  |
|  | 2.5 Describe the effects on the individual of experiencing communication difficulties  |
|  | 2.6 Identify additional agencies and resources to support with communication needs   |
| 3. Understand changing physical needs of individuals affected by stroke  | 3.1 Describe the <b>changes in the brain</b> of an individual  |
|  | 3.2 Describe the <b>physical effects</b> of stroke on an individual  |



|      |   | 3.3    | Explain the impact a stroke may have<br>on swallowing and nutrition                                 |
|------|---|--------|---|
|      |   | 3.4    | Describe the possible effects of stroke   |
|      |   |        | on <b>sensory</b> ability   |
|      |   | 3.5    | Analyse the fluctuating nature of effects of stroke on an individual                                |
| 4.   | Understand the impact of the effects of stroke on daily living                                  | 4.1    | Explain how the use of daily activities<br>can promote recovery and<br>independence                 |
|      |   | 4.2    | Explain the importance of <b>repetition</b> to  |
|      |   | 4.3    | promote recovery<br>Identify the effects of fatigue in stroke<br>rehabilitation                     |
|      |   | 4.4    | Describe the implication of stroke on an individual's <b>lifestyle</b>                              |
| 5.   | Understand the associated complications for an individual with                                  | 5.1    | Explain the <b>psychological and</b><br>emotional effects that the individual                       |
|      | stroke  |        | may experience  |
|      |   | 5.2    | Describe the <b>cognitive</b> needs of the individual   |
|      |   | 5.3    | Describe the <b>health needs</b> that may   |
|      |   | 0.0    | be associated with stroke   |
| 6.   | Understand the importance of adopting<br>a person-centred approach in stroke<br>care management | 6.1    | Explain how <b>person-centred values</b><br>must influence all aspects of stroke care<br>management |
|      | J.  | 6.2    | Explain the importance of working in partnership with <b>others</b> to support care management      |
|      |   | 6.3    | Describe the importance of working in   |
|      |   |        | ways that promote <b>active</b>   |
|      |   |        | participation   |
| Addi | tional information about this unit (ar  | nplifi | cation for assessment criteria)   |
|      | -   | -      |   |
|      | cts of stroke may include:  |        |   |
|      | phasia  |        |   |
|      | praxia  |        |   |
|      | vearthria   |        |   |

- Dysarthria
- Aphasia and apraxia these terms are often used interchangeably with dysphasia and dyspraxia

## Aids may include:

- High tech (electronic technology)
- Low tech (anything non-electronic)

# Changes in the brain

• The dominant side of the brain



• Non dominant side

## Physical effects may include

- Fatigue
- Mobility
- Continence
- Pain
- Spatial awareness

### **Sensory** includes:

- Vision
- Hearing

Repetition - this could mean repeating day to day activities or therapeutic remedies

## Psychological and emotional needs may include:

- Self esteem
- Confidence
- Depression
- Mood swings
- Grieving process
- Anger and frustration
- Behaviour changes
- Isolation

## Cognitive needs may include:

- Memory loss
- Perception
- Lack of inhibition
- Personality changes
- Emotional instability

## Health needs:

- Medication
- Co-morbidity
- Complications e.g.
- Aspiration
- Airway obstruction
- Hypoxia
- Hypotension
- Hypertension
- Hyperglycaemia
- Bed sores

## Person centred values include:

- Individuality
- Rights



- Choices
- Privacy
- Independence
- Dignity
- Respect
- Partnership

### Others may include

- Partner
- Family
- Friends
- Neighbours
- Care worker
- Colleague
- Manager
- Social Worker
- Occupational Therapist
- GP
- Speech & Language Therapist
- Physiotherapist
- Pharmacist
- Nurse
- Psychologist
- Independent Mental Capacity Advocate
- Community Psychiatric Nurse
- Clinical nurse specialists

**Active participation** - is a way of working that regards individuals as active partners in their own support rather than passive recipients. Active participation recognises each individual's right to participate in the activities and relationships of everyday life as independently as possible

Lifestyle includes:

- Driving
- Return to work
- Finances
- Benefits
- Sexuality
- Relationships
- Transport
- Leisure

| Unit aim(s) | The aim of this unit is to provide an          |
|-------------|--|
|             | understanding of legislation, guidelines and   |
|             | best practice to support stroke care           |
|             | management. It will enable learners to         |
|             | explore the effects of stroke on an individual |



|   | and to provide an understanding of how a person-centred approach may support stroke |
|---|---|
|   | care management.  |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in  |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | accordance with the Assessment Principles   |
| appropriate)                            | developed by Skills for Care and  |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual  |
|   | requirements.   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | N/A   |
| and relevant national occupational      |   |
| standards                               |   |



| Titl | e:   | -                 | 50/0869 Understand Parkinson's<br>adult care staff   |
|------|--|-------------------|--|
| Lev  | rel:   | 3                 |  |
| Cre  | dit Value:   | 4                 |  |
| Cal  | culated GLH:   | 26                |  |
| Lea  | Irning Outcomes  | Asse              | essment Criteria   |
| The  | e learner will:  | The               | learner can:   |
| 1.   | Understand the signs, symptoms and<br>progression of Parkinson's                   | 1.3               | Explain the causes of Parkinson's  |
|      |  | 1.5               | Identify conditions within Parkinsonism  |
| 2.   | Understand the impact of Parkinson's on<br>the <b>individual</b> and <b>others</b> |                   | Describe how Parkinson's impacts on an<br>individual's quality of life<br>Explain the impact of Parkinson's on an<br>individual's relationships with others<br>Explain the impact of fluctuations in<br>Parkinson's on an individual and others  |
| 3.   | Understand the support available to<br>manage Parkinson's                          | 3.1<br>3.2<br>3.3 | Describe the stages of diagnosis of<br>Parkinson's<br>Describe how to access services and<br>networks appropriate to the individual<br>with Parkinson's Describe methods,<br>practices and interventions used to<br>support individuals to manage their<br>symptoms<br>Explain how an individual's preferences<br>are taken into account when supporting<br>them to manage their Parkinson's |
| 4.   | Understand the issues associated with<br>Parkinson's medication                    | 4.1<br>4.2<br>4.3 | Explain the consequences when<br>medication is not taken or given on time<br>Explain the consequences for the<br>individual of common side-effects of<br>Parkinson's medication<br>Describe how to alleviate the side<br>effects of Parkinson's medication   |



| 5. Understand communication and<br>cognitive challenges associate with<br>Parkinson's at different stages  | <ul> <li>5.1 Describe the communication and cognitive challenges at different stages of Parkinson's</li> <li>5.2 Describe the impact on the individual and others in relation to: <ul> <li>communication challenges</li> <li>cognitive challenges</li> </ul> </li> <li>5.3 Explain how to implement techniques used to address: <ul> <li>communication challenges</li> <li>cognitive challenges</li> <li>communication challenges</li> <li>communication challenges</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |  |
|--|--|--|
| Additional information about this unit (a  | amplification for assessment criteria)   |  |
| An <b>individual</b> is someone requiring care or s  | upport.  |  |
| Others may include:<br>• Carers<br>• Families<br>• Friends<br>• Care and support workers<br>• Specialist Nurses<br>• <b>Techniques</b> are those designed specifically to support individuals in managing<br>communication and cognition challenges directly associated with Parkinson's, such as<br>cognitive freezing. |  |  |
| Unit aim(s)  | The purpose of this unit is to give learners a fundamental understanding of Parkinson's and its impact on the individual. This is a knowledge only unit.   |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)  | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.   |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational  | N/A  |  |

standards



| Title:   | Y/618/5072 Understanding self-<br>directed support  |  |
|--|---|--|
| Level:   | 3   |  |
| Credit Value:  | 4   |  |
| GLH:   | 26  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand self-directed support</li> <li>Understand how to enable an individual</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain the principles underpinning self-<br/>directed support</li> <li>1.2 Explain the legislation and policies<br/>underpinning self-directed support</li> <li>1.3 Explain the benefits to an individual of<br/>self-directed support</li> <li>1.4 Define: <ul> <li>indicative allocation / budget</li> <li>supported self-assessment</li> <li>support plan</li> <li>outcome focused review</li> </ul> </li> <li>1.5 Explain barriers to self-directed support</li> <li>2.1 Explain how a person-centred approach</li> </ul>   |  |
| 2. Onderstand now to enable an individual to direct their own support                                | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain how a person-centred approach<br/>enables individuals to develop<br/>themselves to meet their own identified<br/>goals</li> <li>2.2 Explain how person-centred planning<br/>informs individual support plans</li> <li>2.3 Explain how individuals can be<br/>supported to develop their own support<br/>plans</li> <li>2.4 Identify others who assist in developing<br/>support plans</li> <li>2.5 Explain how individuals can direct their<br/>own support if: <ul> <li>they do not have a personal budget</li> <li>they do have a personal budget</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |  |
| 3. Understand the different ways that people can use their personal budget                           | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain the ways individuals can use their personal budget to buy support</li> <li>3.2 Identify innovative ways that individuals can spend their personal budget other than buying social care services</li> <li>3.3 Explain the restrictions which may be imposed on personal budgets</li> </ul>  |  |



|    |   | 3.4 | Describe the criteria used to sign off a support plan  |
|----|---|-----|--|
|    |   | 3.5 | Describe person-centred approaches to<br>risk that ensures that individuals have<br>what is important to them whilst staying<br>healthy and safe |
| 4. | Understand the outcome focused review process | 4.1 | Explain the process of an outcome focused review   |
|    | P   | 4.2 | Explain how to support someone to prepare for their outcome focused review   |

**Self-directed support** – puts the person in need of support in control of that support.

An **individual** is someone requiring care or support.

**Policy or guidance** – refers to any current policies and guidance around this area. These could be local to you area/service or national legislation.

**Person-centred approach** refers to a range of practical tools that form the basis of person-centred planning.

**Others** may include:

- Families, friends or carers
- social workers
- brokers
- peer support
- voluntary user-led organisations
- independent support brokerage

| Unit aim(s)                             | The unit provides the knowledge and       |
|---|---|
|   | understanding required to support an      |
|   | individual to direct their own support.   |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in    |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | accordance with the Assessment Principles |
| appropriate)                            | developed by Skills for Care and          |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual          |
|   | requirements.                             |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | N/A                                       |
| and relevant national occupational      |   |
| standards                               |   |



| Title:   | H/650/0856 Support individuals with self-directed support   |
|--|---|
| Level:   | 3   |
| Credit Value:  | 7   |
| Calculated GLH:  | 43  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
|  |   |
| 1. Understand self-directed support  | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain the principles underpinning self-directed support and how this differs from traditional support</li> <li>1.2 Explain the benefits of an individual having self-directed support</li> <li>1.3 Explain how legislation, policy or guidance underpin self-directed support</li> <li>1.4 Explain what the following terms mean: <ul> <li>indicative allocation</li> <li>supported self-assessment</li> <li>support plan</li> <li>outcome focused review</li> </ul> </li> <li>1.5 Outline the possible barriers to self-directed support and how to overcome them</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Understand how to support individuals<br/>to direct their own support and develop<br/>their support plan</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain how to use person-centred thinking to enable individuals to think about what is important to them, and how they want to be supported</li> <li>2.2 Explain how individuals can direct their own support if they do not have a personal budget</li> <li>2.3 Explain how person-centred planning can be used to inform a support plan</li> <li>2.4 Explain the roles of others who can assist individuals in developing their support plan</li> <li>2.5 Describe ways that individuals can develop a support plan</li> <li>2.6 Describe person-centred thinking tools that can be used to help individuals think about ways they can spend their personal budget</li> </ul> |



|    |  | 27  | Describe whet might he included in the                                       |
|----|--|-----|--|
|    |  | 2.7 | Describe what might be included in the costings for a support plan           |
| 3. | Understand the different ways that         | 3.1 | Explain ways that individuals can use  |
|    | individuals can use their personal budget  | 2.2 | their personal budget to buy support   |
|    |  | 3.2 | Research innovative ways that  |
|    |  |     | individuals can spend their personal<br>budget other than buying social care |
|    |  |     | services   |
|    |  | 3.3 | Explain what restrictions may be   |
|    |  | 0.0 | imposed on personal budgets  |
|    |  | 3.4 | Describe the criteria that are used to                                       |
|    |  |     | sign off a support plan  |
|    |  | 3.5 | Describe a person-centred approach to  |
|    |  |     | risk that ensures that individuals have                                      |
|    |  |     | what is important to them whilst staying                                     |
| 4  | Compart in divides to to discuss the       | A 4 | healthy and safe   |
| 4. | Support <b>individuals</b> to direct their | 4.1 | Support an individual to express what is                                     |
|    | support                                    |     | important to them in how they want to be supported in the future             |
|    |  | 4.2 | Use person-centred thinking tools to   |
|    |  |     | support an individual to have maximum  |
|    |  |     | choice and control in their life   |
|    |  | 4.3 | Use person-centred thinking tools to   |
|    |  |     | support an individual to develop their                                       |
|    |  |     | support plan   |
|    |  | 4.4 | , , ,  |
|    |  |     | others who could work with them to develop their support plan                |
| 5. | Support individuals to use their personal  | 5.1 | Support an individual to understand the                                      |
| 5. | budget in different ways                   | 5.1 | different ways they could develop their                                      |
|    | ,<br>,                                     |     | support plan   |
|    |  | 5.2 | Support an individual to understand  |
|    |  |     | what restrictions may be imposed on  |
|    |  |     | their personal budget and why  |
|    |  | 5.3 | Support an individual to think about   |
|    |  |     | different options for spending their   |
|    |  | 54  | personal budget<br>Demonstrate a person-centred                              |
|    |  | 5.1 | approach to balancing risk with  |
|    |  |     | individuals when making decisions  |
|    |  |     | about their personal budget  |
| 6. | Support individuals with an outcome-       | 6.1 | Explain the process of an outcome-   |
|    | focused review                             |     | focused review   |
|    |  | 6.2 | Support an individual to prepare for an                                      |
|    |  |     | outcome-focused review   |
|    |  | 6.3 | Support an individual to be at the   |
|    |  |     | centre of the review process   |



Self-directed support – puts the person in need of support in control of that support

An individual is someone requiring care or support

**Legislation, policy or guidance** – refers to any current legislation or guidance around this area

**Person-centred thinking** is a range of practical tools that form the basis of personcentred planning. They help focus on the individual, their gifts and skills, what is important to them, and what makes really good support for them

**Others** may include:

- families, friends or carers
- social workers
- brokers
- peer support
- voluntary user-led organisations
- independent support brokerage
- advocate

### Person-centred thinking tools include:

- Important to/for (recorded as a one page profile)
- Working/Not working
- The doughnut
- Matching staff
- Relationship circle
- Communication charts
- plus 1 questions
- Citizenship tool
- Decision making agreement
- Presence to contribution
- Dreaming
- Community connecting related tools:
- Who am I? My gifts and capacities
- Hopes and Fears
- Mapping our network
- Passion audit
- Capacity mapping
- Who am I My places

| Unit aim(s) | This unit is aimed at those working in a wide   |
|-------------|---|
|             | range of settings. It provides the knowledge    |
|             | and skills required to support an individual to |
|             | direct their own support. A person-centred      |
|             | approach is the foundation to achieving this    |
|             | unit.   |



| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | Assessment criteria 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 4.4, 5.1,<br>5.2, 5.3, 5.4 and 6.2, 6.3 must be assessed<br>in a real work environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
|--|--|
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | Links to HSC 35  |



| Title:   | J/616/5416 Promote nutrition and<br>hydration in health and social care<br>settings   |  |
|--|---|--|
| Level:   | 3   |  |
| Credit Value:  | 6   |  |
| GLH:   | 34  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:                                       | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| 1. Understand what makes up a <b>balanced</b><br><b>diet</b>                 | <ol> <li>1.1 Define the main food groups</li> <li>1.2 Identify sources of essential nutrients.</li> <li>1.3 Explain the role of essential nutrients<br/>for health</li> <li>1.4 Evaluate the impact of poor diet on<br/>health and wellbeing</li> <li>1.5 Explain what adaptations to a balanced<br/>diet may be required for different<br/>groups</li> </ol> |  |
| 2. Understand nutritional guidelines   | <ul> <li>2.1 Summarise current national <b>nutritional</b><br/>guidelines for a balanced diet</li> <li>2.2 Explain how to access additional<br/>support and information relating to<br/>nutrition and hydration</li> </ul>  |  |
| 3. Promote nutrition in health and social care settings                      | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain the importance of a balanced diet to an individual</li> <li>3.2 Plan an appropriate balanced diet with an individual</li> <li>3.3 Promote an appropriate balanced diet with an individual</li> <li>3.4 Evaluate the effectiveness of different ways of promoting healthy eating</li> </ul>   |  |
| 4. Encourage hydration in health and social care settings                    | <ul> <li>4.1 Explain the importance of hydration to<br/>an individual</li> <li>4.2 Describe signs of dehydration to an<br/>individual</li> <li>4.3 Support and promote hydration with<br/>individuals</li> <li>4.4 Evaluate ways of supporting and<br/>promoting hydration</li> </ul>   |  |
| 5. Understand how to prevent malnutrition in health and social care settings | <ul> <li>5.1 Explain the <b>factors</b> that may affect nutritional intake</li> <li>5.2 Explain the <b>risk factors</b> that may lead to malnutrition</li> </ul>  |  |



|    |   | 5.3  | Describe the signs of malnutrition                            |
|----|---|------|---|
|    |   | 5.4  | Explain fortification of foods and                            |
|    |   |      | drinks  |
|    |   | 5.5  | Describe the appropriate use of                               |
|    |   |      | nutritional supplements                                       |
| 6. | Carry out nutritional screening in health     | 6.1  | Describe the purpose of <b>nutritional</b>                    |
|    | and social care settings                      |      | screening.  |
|    |   | 6.2  | Carry out nutritional screening with an individual.           |
|    |   | 6.3  | Implement the actions identified by<br>nutritional screening. |
|    |   | 6.4  | Monitor, record and review the actions                        |
|    |   | •••• | taken following nutritional screening                         |
| 7. | Be able to monitor and record nutrition       | 7.1  | Describe the roles and responsibilities of                    |
|    | and hydration needs with individuals in       |      | others in managing the nutritional and                        |
|    | health and social care settings               |      | hydration needs of individuals                                |
|    | j.  | 7.2  | Explain ways in which nutrition and                           |
|    |   |      | hydration can be monitored                                    |
|    |   | 7.3  | Monitor and record nutrition and                              |
|    |   |      | hydration of an individual in accordance                      |
|    |   |      | with their <b>plan of care</b>                                |
| 8. | Understand factors that affect <b>special</b> | 8.1  | Describe factors that may promote                             |
|    | dietary requirements in health and            |      | healthy eating for different groups                           |
|    | social care settings                          | 8.2  | Describe factors that may create                              |
|    |   |      | barriers to healthy eating for different                      |
|    |   |      | groups  |
|    |   | 8.3  | Explain why individuals may have                              |
|    |   |      | special dietary requirements                                  |
|    |   |      |   |

## **Balanced Diet:**

A diet containing adequate energy and all of the essential nutrients that cannot be synthesized in adequate quantities by the body, in amounts adequate for growth, energy needs, nitrogen equilibrium, repair and maintenance of normal health

**Health and well-being** can be described as the absence of physical illness, disease and mental distress. This is a negative definition of health and well-being

Different groups can be: people who are older, those with dementia or learning disabilities

**Nutritional Guidelines:** The Government recommends that all individuals should consume a diet that contains:

- plenty of starchy foods such as rice, bread, pasta and potatoes (choosing wholegrain varieties when possible)
- plenty of fruit and vegetables; at least 5 portions of a variety of fruit and vegetables a day



- some protein-rich foods such as meat, fish, eggs, beans and non-dairy sources of protein, such as nuts and pulses
- some milk and dairy, choosing reduced fat versions or eating smaller amounts of full fat versions or eating them less often
- just a little saturated fat, salt and sugar

The **individual** is the person who is following the healthy eating routine

Factors that may affect nutritional intake may vary for person to person and could be down to physical and mental health issues

**Risk factors** that may lead to malnutrition may be: Lack of capacity and or understanding of nutrition or ability to monitor their own intake

**Fortification** of food and drinks may include vitamins and nutrients added to them to boost health benefits of the product

**Nutritional supplements** may be used for people who have low immune systems due to previous or existing illness or by those who feel that they may benefit as they lack certain essential vitamins in their bodies

**Nutrition screening** is the process of identifying patients at high nutritional risk so that more extensive nutrition assessment can be performed

Others may include: Parents, families and carers, GP's, Nurses and Dieticians

The **plan of care** is the person-centred plan that should detail how nutrition and hydration will be implemented and followed with the person concerned

**Special dietary requirements** are the needs of the person concerned and these should be implemented in order to maximise the health and wellbeing of the individual

| Unit aim(s)                             | This unit aims to assess the learners            |
|---|--|
|   | understanding and application of how to          |
|   | promote the importance of healthy diets and      |
|   | nutrition in the health and social care setting. |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Assessment criteria 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 4.1, 4.2      |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | 4.3, 6.2, 6.3, 6.4, 7.3 must be assessed in a    |
| appropriate)                            | real work environment.                           |
|   | This qualification must be assessed in           |
|   | accordance with the Assessment Principles        |
|   | developed by Skills for Care and                 |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual                 |
|   | requirements.                                    |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | N/A  |
| and relevant national occupational      |  |
| standards                               |  |



| Title:   | L/650/0877 Principles of supporting an individual to maintain personal hygiene  |  |
|--|---|--|
| Level:   | 2   |  |
| Credit Value:  | 2   |  |
| Calculated GLH:  | 15  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the importance of good<br/>personal hygiene</li> <li>Know how to support an individual to<br/>maintain personal hygiene</li> </ol> | <ol> <li>1.1 Explain why personal hygiene is<br/>important</li> <li>1.2 Describe the effects of poor personal<br/>hygiene on health and well-being</li> <li>2.1 Explain how to address personal<br/>hygiene issues with an individual</li> </ol>  |  |
| maintain persona nygiene   | <ul><li>2.2 Identify routines that contribute to good personal hygiene</li><li>2.3 Describe how to support an individual to develop and improve personal hygiene routines</li></ul>   |  |
|  | <ul> <li>2.4 Explain how to support the individual whilst maintaining their independence during personal hygiene routines</li> <li>2.5 Describe how to maintain the dignity of an individual when supporting intimate personal hygiene</li> </ul> |  |
|  | <ul> <li>2.6 Describe risks to own health in supporting an individual's personal hygiene routines and how to reduce them</li> </ul>   |  |
|  | 2.7 Identify others involved in supporting<br>an individual to maintain personal<br>hygiene   |  |
| 3. Understand when poor hygiene may be<br>an indicator of underlying personal<br>issues  | <ul> <li>3.1 Identify underlying personal issues that cause poor personal hygiene</li> <li>3.2 Describe how to address underlying personal issues in relation to poor personal hygiene</li> </ul>   |  |
| Additional information about this unit (ar   | nplification for assessment criteria)   |  |
| N/A  |   |  |



| Unit aim(s)  | The purpose of this unit is to provide the<br>learner with the knowledge and<br>understanding of providing hygiene support<br>to increase an individual's participation in<br>tasks and activities. It is aimed at those<br>whose role includes providing direct support<br>and assistance to individuals. |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | N/A  |



| Title:  | T/616/5475 Support individuals to maintain personal hygiene   |  |
|---|---|--|
| Level:  | 2   |  |
| Credit Value:   | 2   |  |
| GLH:  | 17  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| 1. Understand the importance of good personal hygiene   | <ol> <li>Explain why personal hygiene is<br/>important</li> <li>Identify the effects of poor personal<br/>hygiene on health and well-being</li> </ol>   |  |
| <ol> <li>Be able to support individuals to<br/>maintain personal hygiene</li> </ol>                         | <ul> <li>2.1 Support an individual to understand factors that contribute to good personal hygiene</li> <li>2.2 Address personal hygiene issues with the individual in a sensitive manner without imposing own values and beliefs</li> <li>2.3 Support the individual to develop awareness of the impact of poor hygiene on others</li> <li>2.4 Support the preferences, needs and wishes of the individual while maintaining their independence</li> <li>2.5 Describe how to maintain dignity of an individual when supporting intimate personal hygiene</li> <li>2.6 Identify risks to own health in supporting an individual with personal hygiene routines</li> <li>2.7 Reduce risks to own health when supporting the individual with personal hygiene routines</li> <li>2.8 Identify others who may be involved in supporting the individual to maintain personal hygiene</li> </ul> |  |
| 3. Understand when poor hygiene may be<br>an indicator of other <b>underlying</b><br><b>personal issues</b> | <ul> <li>3.1 Identify underlying personal issues that may be a cause of poor personal hygiene</li> <li>3.2 Describe how underlying personal issues might be addressed</li> </ul>  |  |



An individual is someone requiring care or support

Factors may include:

- Washing
- Showering/bathing
- Washing hair
- Cleaning clothes
- Keeping nails clean
- Washing hands after using the toilet
- Shaving

**Preferences and needs** will include any particular requirements around personal hygiene determined by an individual's culture/faith/belief/religion

## Maintaining dignity includes

- privacy
- having trust on both sides
- being professional
- awareness of abuse
- averting eye contact to avoid embarrassment
- being gentle
- being able to empathise

**Risks** – from infection and reduction through infection control techniques

#### Others may include

- The individual
- Colleagues
- Families or carers
- Friends
- Other professionals
- Members of the public
- Advocates

## Underlying personal issues may include

- financial issues
- abuse
- health issues

| Unit aim(s) | This unit is aimed at those working in a wide   |  |  |
|-------------|---|--|--|
|             | range of settings. It provides the learner with |  |  |
|             | the knowledge and skills required to support    |  |  |
|             | an individual in maintaining personal           |  |  |
|             | hygiene. It covers good personal hygiene        |  |  |
|             | routines and why these are important, as        |  |  |



|  | well as potential contributory factors to poor personal hygiene.   |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body (if                       | Learning outcome 2 must be assessed in a real work environment.  |  |  |
| appropriate)   | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |  |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | HSC 27, 29, 218, 219, 220  |  |  |



| Title:   | T/618/5161 Facilitate person-centred<br>assessment, planning, implementation<br>and review  |  |
|--|---|--|
| Level:   | 3   |  |
| Credit Value:  | 6   |  |
| GLH:   | 45  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| 1. Understand the principles of person<br>centred assessment and care planning | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain the importance of a holistic approach to assessment and planning of care or support</li> <li>1.2 Describe ways of supporting the individual to lead the assessment and planning process</li> <li>1.3 Describe ways the assessment and planning process can be adapted to maximise an individual's ownership and control of it</li> </ul>   |  |
| 2. Be able to facilitate person centred assessment                             | <ul> <li>2.1 Establish with the individual a partnership approach to the assessment process</li> <li>2.2 Confirm with the individual how the process should be carried out and who else should be involved in the process</li> <li>2.3 Agree with the individual and <b>others</b> the intended outcomes of the assessment process and <b>care plan</b></li> <li>2.4 Ensure that assessment takes account of the individual's strengths and aspirations as well as needs</li> <li>2.5 Work with the individual and others to identify support requirements and preferences</li> </ul> |  |
| 3. Contribute to the planning of care or support                               | <ul> <li>3.1 Take account of <b>factors</b> that influence the type and level of care or support to be provided</li> <li>3.2 Work with the individual and others to explore <b>options and resources</b> for delivery of the plan</li> <li>3.3 Contribute to a decision with others on how component parts of a plan will be delivered and by whom</li> </ul>   |  |



|                     |   | 3.4 | Record the plan in a suitable format   |
|---------------------|---|-----|--|
| 4. Support<br>plans | the implementation of care                                |     | Carry out assigned aspects of a care<br>plan<br>Support others to carry out aspects of a                     |
|                     |   |     | care plan for which they are responsible   |
|                     |   | 4.3 | Adjust the plan in response to changing needs or circumstances   |
| 5. Monitor          | a care plan   | 5.1 | Agree methods for monitoring the way<br>a care plan is delivered   |
|                     |   | 5.2 | Collate monitoring information from agreed sources   |
|                     |   | 5.3 | Record changes that affect the delivery of the care plan   |
|                     | to facilitate a review of care<br>nd their implementation | 6.1 | Seek agreement with the individual and others about:   |
|                     |   |     | <ul> <li>who should be involved in the review<br/>process</li> </ul>   |
|                     |   |     | <ul> <li>criteria to judge effectiveness of the<br/>care plan</li> </ul>                                     |
|                     |   | 6.2 | Seek feedback from the individual and others about how the plan is working                                   |
|                     |   | 6.3 | Use feedback and monitoring/other<br>information to evaluate whether the<br>plan has achieved its objectives |
|                     |   | 6.4 |  |
|                     |   | 6.5 | Document the review process and<br>revisions as required   |
|                     |   |     |  |

The **individual** is the person requiring care or support. An advocate may act on behalf of an individual

A **care plan** may also be known by other names, such as a support plan, individual plan or care delivery plan. It is the document where day to day requirements and preferences for care and support are detailed

### **Others** may include:

- Carers
- Friends and relatives
- Professionals
- Others who are important to the individual's well-being

#### **Factors** may include:

- Feasibility of aspirations
- Beliefs, values and preferences of the individual



| <ul> <li>Risks associated with achieving outcomes</li> <li>Availability of services and other support options</li> </ul>   |  |
|--|--|
| <ul> <li>Options and resources should consider:</li> <li>Informal support</li> <li>Formal support</li> <li>Care or support services</li> <li>Community facilities</li> <li>Financial resources</li> <li>Individual's personal networks</li> </ul>  |  |
| <ul> <li>Revisions may include:</li> <li>Closing the plan if all objectives have been met</li> <li>Reducing the level of support to reflect increased independence</li> <li>Increasing the level of support to address unmet needs</li> <li>Changing the type of support</li> <li>Changing the method of delivering support</li> </ul> |  |
| Unit aim(s)  | This unit is aimed at those working in a wide<br>range of settings. It provides the learner with<br>the knowledge and skills required to facilitate<br>person-centred assessment, planning,<br>implementation and review.  |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)  | Learning outcomes 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 must be<br>assessed in a real work environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards   | HSC 328 and HSC 329  |



| Title:   | K/616/5408 Facilitate active support  |
|--|---|
| Level:   | 3   |
| Credit Value:  | 5   |
| GLH:   | 36  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand how active support<br>facilitates person-centred practical<br>action with an individual      | <ul> <li>1.1 Compare the characteristics of active support with the <b>hotel model</b> in relation to an individual's support</li> <li>1.2 Describe practical changes that could be made within a service setting to: <ul> <li>promote an individual's independence</li> <li>support informed choices</li> </ul> </li> </ul>  |
| 2. Interact with individuals to promote participation  | <ul> <li>2.1 Assess the levels of help an individual would need to participate in new activities</li> <li>2.2 Use task analysis to break a range of new activities into manageable steps for an individual</li> <li>2.3 Evaluate different ways of positively reinforcing an individual's participation in new activities</li> <li>2.4 Demonstrate positive interaction with an individual to promote successful participation in new activities</li> </ul> |
| 3. Develop and implement person-centred daily plans to promote participation                               | <ul> <li>3.1 Develop daily plans with the individual and others to ensure a valued range of activities are available</li> <li>3.2 Support the implementation of daily plans that promote an individual's participation in activities</li> <li>3.3 Review and revise an individual's daily plan with the individual and others to increase the opportunities for participation</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Use person-centred records to evaluate<br/>an individual's participation in activities</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>4.1 Develop a person-centred record to monitor an individual's participation in activities</li> <li>4.2 Review an individual's participation in activities to assess changes over time</li> </ul>  |



| 4.3 Evaluate the extent to which an         |
|---|
| individual's participation over time        |
| represents the balance of activity          |
| associated with a valued lifestyle          |
| 4.4 Explain the changes required to improve |
| the quality of an individual's              |
| participation to promote independence       |
| and choice                                  |
|   |

## Additional information (amplification for assessment criteria)

**Active Support** is a person-centred model of how to interact with individuals combined with a daily planning system that promotes participation and enhances quality of life.

**Person-centred** reflects what is important to individuals and helps them to live the life they choose.

Individual is someone requiring care or support.

**Hotel model** refers to institutional style settings organised mainly around staffing needs. They are not person-centred and offer a poor quality of life to individuals. For example, where carers undertake all the domestic tasks and do not provide opportunities for individuals to participate in constructive activities .

**Levels of help** refers to graduated levels of assistance, from simple verbal reminders providing the lowest level of support to actual physical guidance providing the highest level. Assistance should be given flexibly according to the individual's need for help, and should be focused on encouraging as much independence as possible.

**Task analysis** refers to breaking down tasks into small, manageable steps as in recipes or DIY guides. The size of each step or number of steps for a specific task should vary according to the individual's ability or need for support.

**Positively reinforcing** refers to what an individual gains from undertaking a specific task. These can include naturally occurring rewards (eg. Drinking a cup of tea the individual has just made) or other things that the individual particularly likes (eg. Praise and attention or a preferred activity) as an encouragement or reward for participating in a specified activity.

**Positive interaction** refers to supportive interaction using the levels of assistance, task analysis and positive reinforcement that helps an individual to participate in constructive activity.

### Others may include

- The individual
- Colleagues
- Families or carers
- Friends



- Other professionals
- Members of the public
- Advocates

**Valued range of activities** refers to the balance of activities that contribute to a good quality of life for individuals, incorporating vocational, domestic, personal, leisure, educational and social activities.

**Disengagement** means doing no constructive or meaningful activity, and can include aimlessly wandering about, pacing, staring, sitting, lying down, purposelessly fiddling with items and so on, with no social contact.

**Valued lifestyle** refers to the balance of activities that contribute to a good quality of life for individuals, incorporating vocational, domestic, personal, leisure, educational and social activities.

| Unit aim(s)  | The purpose of this unit is to provide the<br>learner with knowledge, understanding and<br>skills to promote active support to increase<br>an individual's participation in tasks and<br>activities. It is aimed at those whose role<br>includes planning, monitoring and providing<br>direct support and assistance to individuals. |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | N/A  |



| Title:  | F/650/0864 Introduction to personalisation in social care  |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 3  |
| Credit Value:   | 4  |
| Calculated GLH:   | 23   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:                                | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1. Understand the meaning of<br>personalisation in social care        | <ul> <li>1.1 Define the term 'personalisation'</li> <li>1.2 Explain how personalisation can benefit<br/>individuals</li> <li>1.3 Explain the relationship between rights,<br/>choice and personalisation</li> <li>1.4 Identify current legislation, other<br/>national policy documents and local<br/>codes of practice that promote<br/>personalisation</li> </ul>                            |
| 2. Understand systems that support personalisation                    | <ul> <li>2.1 Identify local and national systems that are designed to support personalisation</li> <li>2.2 Describe the impact that personalisation has on the process of commissioning social care</li> <li>2.3 Explain how direct payments and individual budgets support personalisation</li> </ul>   |
| 3. Understand how personalisation affects the way support is provided | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain how person centred thinking, person-centred planning and person centred approaches support personalisation</li> <li>3.2 Describe how personalisation affects the balance of power between individuals and those providing support</li> <li>3.3 Give examples of how personalisation may affect the way an <b>individual</b> is supported on a day to day basis</li> </ul> |
| 4. Understand how to implement personalisation                        | <ul> <li>4.1 Describe the skills, attitudes and approaches needed by those providing support or brokering services</li> <li>4.2 Identify potential barriers</li> <li>4.3 Describe ways to overcome barriers to in day to day work</li> <li>4.4 Describe types of support that individuals or their families might need</li> </ul>  |



|   | in order to maximise the benefits of a<br>personalised service |  |
|---|--|--|
|   |  |  |
| Additional information about this unit (a                 | mplification for assessment criteria)                          |  |
| An <b>individual</b> is someone requiring care or support |  |  |
| Unit aim(s)   | This unit is aimed at those working in a wide                  |  |
|   | range of settings. It introduces                               |  |
|   | understanding of how personalisation affects                   |  |
|   | the provision of social care services, with a                  |  |
|   | focus on the systems, skills and support                       |  |
|   | needed to implement personalised provision.                    |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by                      | This qualification must be assessed in                         |  |
| a sector or regulatory body (if                           | accordance with the Assessment Principles                      |  |
| appropriate)  | developed by Skills for Care and                               |  |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual                               |  |
|   | requirements.  |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit                   | HSC 24   |  |
| and relevant national occupational                        | HSC 35   |  |
| standards   | HSC 346  |  |
|   | HSC 3119   |  |



| Title:   | Y/650/0870 Develop and sustain<br>effective working relationships with<br>staff in other agencies  |
|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |
| Credit Value:  | 4  |
| Calculated GLH:  | 27   |
| Learning Outcomes  | Assessment Criteria  |
| The learner will:  | The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand the context of working in partnership  | <ul> <li>1.1 Identify the principal agencies in terms of their: <ul> <li>Nature</li> <li>roles</li> <li>functions</li> <li>policies and procedures</li> </ul> </li> <li>1.2 Explain methods of communication and decision making</li> <li>1.3 Identify the roles and responsibilities of key people who work in agencies involved in joint working arrangements</li> <li>1.4 Describe the effect agency structure and culture may have upon the policy and practice of joint working</li> <li>1.5 Explain benefits of working in partnership</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Develop effective working relationships<br/>with staff in other agencies</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Develop clear action plans for joint work<br/>which clarify roles and responsibilities of<br/>the respective parties</li> <li>2.2 Reach agreements about roles and<br/>responsibilities and arrangements for<br/>decision making</li> <li>2.3 Apply principles of equality, diversity<br/>and anti-discriminatory practice in<br/>working relationships with staff in other<br/>agencies</li> <li>2.4 Confirm arrangements for joint working</li> <li>2.5 Identify methods to monitor and review<br/>the progress of joint work</li> <li>2.6 Complete records and store them<br/>according to agency requirements</li> <li>2.7 Communicate information to people<br/>who are authorised to have it</li> </ul> |



| 3. | Maintain effective working relationships | 3.1 | Identify barriers to joint working    |
|----|--|-----|---------------------------------------|
|    |  | 3.2 | Explain methods of identifying and    |
|    |  |     | resolving conflict within and between |
|    |  |     | agencies and between individuals      |
|    |  | 3.3 | Explain methods of assessing the      |
|    |  |     | effectiveness of joint working        |
|    |  |     | relationships                         |
|    |  | 3.4 | Contribute to regular reviews of      |
|    |  |     | effectiveness and efficiency of joint |
|    |  |     | working arrangements                  |
|    |  | 3.5 | Identify ways in which joint working  |
|    |  |     | arrangements could be improved        |
|    |  |     |                                       |

# Arrangements for joint working:

- appropriate to the nature and purpose of the work
- likely to be effective in establishing and maintaining relationships
- respect confidentiality while balancing risks of sharing or not sharing information

| Unit aim(s)                             | This unit is about sustaining and developing    |
|---|---|
|   | working relationships with staff in other       |
|   | organisations.                                  |
|   | Effective working is a key feature of, and      |
|   | increasing importance in justice, social care   |
|   | and health organisations. Workers are not       |
|   | expected to set up effective working            |
|   | agreements from scratch, but are expected       |
|   | to contribute to optimising the value of them.  |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Learning outcome 5 must be assessed in a        |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | real work environment.                          |
| appropriate)                            | This qualification must be assessed in          |
|   | accordance with the Assessment Principles       |
|   | developed by Skills for Care and                |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual                |
|   | requirements.                                   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit is directly related to the Skills for |
| and relevant national occupational      | Justice National Occupational Standard: F403    |
| standards                               | Develop and sustain effective working           |
|   | relationships with staff in other agencies      |



| Title:   | A/650/0862 Support families in<br>maintaining relationships in their wider<br>social structures  |  |
|--|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |  |
| Credit Value:  | 4  |  |
| Calculated GLH:  | 24   |  |
| Learning Outcomes  | Assessment Criteria  |  |
| The learner will:  | The learner can:   |  |
| 1. Understand the importance of social interactions and relationships for families of people with specific needs | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain why social contacts are<br/>important and should be encouraged</li> <li>1.2 Analyse the effects of isolation</li> <li>1.3 Identify sources of information on social<br/>structures</li> </ul>   |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the issues surrounding<br/>discrimination</li> </ol>   | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe attitudes, beliefs and assumptions which can lead to stigma and discrimination</li> <li>2.2 Identify the forms which discrimination may take</li> <li>2.3 Describe discriminatory behaviours between different groups and in different settings</li> </ul>   |  |
| 3. Support families to access opportunities<br>for social contact within their wider<br>social structures        | <ul> <li>3.1 Engage with a family in a way that<br/>encourages trust and mutual respect</li> <li>3.2 Identify opportunities for social contact<br/>in a family's environment</li> <li>3.3 Encourage a family to seek out services<br/>within their community</li> <li>3.4 Support a family to use available<br/>services in the community</li> </ul>       |  |
| Additional information about this unit (a  | mplification for assessment criteria)  |  |
| N/A  |  |  |
| Unit aim(s)  | This unit is aimed at those working with<br>families. It focuses on promoting social<br>inclusion through encouraging and<br>supporting families to use services and<br>maintain social contacts within the<br>community. The approach promoted through<br>this unit is collaborative, non-directive and<br>enabling and recognises the rights of families |  |



|   | to make their own decisions and choices and<br>to be supported in following these through. |
|---|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Learning outcome 3 must be assessed in a   |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | real work environment.   |
| appropriate)                            | This qualification must be assessed in   |
|   | accordance with the Assessment Principles  |
|   | developed by Skills for Care and   |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual   |
|   | requirements.  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | HSC 390 (MH 12)  |
| and relevant national occupational      |  |
| standards                               |  |



| Title:  | T/650/1445 Support individuals to deal with personal relationship problems   |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 3  |
| Credit Value:   | 5  |
| GLH:  | 26   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1. Understand how to support individuals<br>to assess personal relationship problems                          | <ol> <li>Describe problems that may arise within<br/>relationships and the potential effects<br/>on an individual's well-being</li> <li>Explain how to diagnose problems in an<br/>individual's relationship</li> <li>Describe the different causes of<br/>problems in an individual's relationship</li> </ol>   |
| 2. Support individuals to overcome<br>personal relationship problems  | <ul> <li>2.1 Work with the individual and others, to identify the level of support needed to overcome problems in a relationship</li> <li>2.2 Produce a plan to maintain the relationship whilst managing risks</li> <li>2.3 Apply the agreed support criteria for overcoming personal relationship problems</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Understand how to access specialist<br/>support about personal relationship<br/>problems</li> </ol>  | <ul> <li>3.1 Describe the different circumstances that would require additional or specialist advice when supporting individuals to manage difficult relationships</li> <li>3.2 Identify the specialist information and support available</li> <li>3.3 Describe how and when to access specialist information or support</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Understand how to support individuals<br/>to end detrimental or harmful<br/>relationships</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>4.1 Describe the different types of support<br/>available for individuals wanting to end<br/>detrimental or harmful relationships</li> <li>4.2 Identify the level of support needed by<br/>an individual to end detrimental or<br/>harmful relationships</li> <li>4.3 Describe the different ways to support<br/>an individual to cope with any distress<br/>when a detrimental or harmful<br/>relationship ends</li> </ul> |



An **individual** is someone requiring care or support

### **Others** may include:

- family
- advocates
- professionals
- others important to the individual's well-being

## Relationship problems may relate to:

- conflict
- tension
- risk of harm
- legal restrictions or requirements

### Agreed support may include:

- supporting the individual to devise strategies to overcome difficulties themselves
- making facilities available for contact meetings with the other person
- encouraging the individual to keep appropriate contact with the person between
- meetings
- providing support to manage fears, anxieties, conflicts and tensions

### **Information** may include:

- observations
- records
- feedback from the individual and others

| Unit aim(s)                          | This unit provides the learner with the      |
|--------------------------------------|--|
|                                      | knowledge and skills required to provide     |
|                                      | support for individuals to manage            |
|                                      | relationship problems.                       |
| Assessment requirements specified by | Learning Outcomes 2 and 5 must be            |
| a sector or regulatory body (if      | assessed in real work environment but in     |
| appropriate)                         | ways that do not intrude on the individual's |
|                                      | privacy.                                     |
|                                      | 1  |



|   | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
|---|--|
| Details of the relationship of the unit | N/A  |
| and relevant national occupational      |  |
| standards                               |  |



| Title:   | K/618/5092 Supporting individuals in their relationships  |
|--|---|
| Level:   | 3   |
| Credit Value:  | 4   |
| GLH:   | 27  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand factors affecting the<br/>capacity of individuals to develop or<br/>maintain relationships</li> <li>Understand how to support individuals</li> </ol> | <ol> <li>Explain reasons why individuals may<br/>find it difficult to establish or maintain<br/>relationships</li> <li>Identify and explain the different types<br/>of support available for individuals who<br/>find it difficult to establish or maintain<br/>relationships</li> <li>Explain how an individual's capacity to<br/>establish or maintain relationships may<br/>affect the support provided</li> <li>Explain the importance of ensuring<br/>confidentiality when providing support<br/>for individuals who find it difficult to<br/>establish or maintain relationships</li> <li>Identify the characteristics of positive</li> </ol> |
| in establishing positive relationships   | <ul> <li>relationships.</li> <li>2.2 Identify the characteristics of<br/>detrimental or harmful relationships.</li> <li>2.3 Identify specific relationships that are<br/>likely to be beneficial for the individual</li> </ul>  |
| 3. Support individuals in developing positive relationships  | <ul> <li>3.1 Identify and explain the types of support an individual needs to extend their social network</li> <li>3.2 Identify and explain the level of support an individual needs to develop positive relationships</li> <li>3.3 Produce a tailored support package for an individual to help extend their social network and develop positive relationships</li> </ul>  |
| 4. Support individuals to maintain existing relationships  | 4.1 Identify and explain the types of<br>support an individual needs to maintain<br>existing relationships with family or<br>friends  |



|   | 4.2 Maintain existing relationships with<br>family or friends   |  |
|---|---|--|
|   | 4.3 Support an individual to assess the level of support they need to maintain existing relationships with family or          |  |
|   | friends   |  |
|   | 4.4 Produce a tailored support package for<br>an individual to help maintain existing<br>relationships with family or friends |  |
| 5. Work with individuals to review the  | 5.1 Use criteria, agreed with an individual,  |  |
| support provided for relationships  | to evaluate how effective support for a relationship has been provided  |  |
|   | 5.2 Ensure that the individual and others as  |  |
|   | appropriate are actively involved in the  |  |
|   | review process<br>5.3 Produce a report on the support given   |  |
|   | to an individual, giving suggestions for  |  |
|   | improvement to meet the individuals   |  |
|   | support needs   |  |
|   |   |  |
| Additional information about this unit (an  | nplification for assessment criteria)   |  |
| Relationships       may include:         • family relationships         • friendships         • social networks |   |  |
| moved to here   |   |  |
| An individual is someone requiring care or support  |   |  |
| Information may include:  |   |  |
| feedback from the individual and others   |   |  |
| <ul> <li>observations</li> <li>records</li> </ul>   |   |  |
| • records   |   |  |
| Others may include:   |   |  |
| • family  |   |  |
| • friends   |   |  |
| <ul> <li>advocates</li> <li>others who are important to the individual's</li> </ul>                             | well-being  |  |
| others who are important to the individual's well-being   |   |  |
| Agreed ways of working will include policies and procedures where these exist                                   |   |  |
| Unit aim(s)   | This unit provides the learner with the   |  |
|   | knowledge and skills required to provide  |  |
|   | support for individuals to establish and maintain relationships and social networks.  |  |
|   |   |  |



| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | Learning Outcomes 2, 3, 4 and 5 must be<br>assessed in a real work environment in ways<br>that do not intrude on the privacy of the<br>individual.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
|--|--|
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | N/A  |



| Title:   | F/616/5401 Theories of relationships and social networks   |
|--|--|
| Level:   | 4  |
| Credit Value:  | 3  |
| GLH:   | 29   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1. Understand relationship theories<br>underpinning adult care practice                    | <ol> <li>1.1 Explain principles of relationship<br/>theories</li> <li>1.2 Analyse how relationship theories<br/>enhance health and social care practice</li> </ol>   |
| 2. Understand factors that can affect the process of a relationship                        | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain the processes involved in the development, maintenance and breakdown of relationships</li> <li>2.2 Analyse <b>influences</b> on the development, maintenance and breakdown of relationships</li> </ul>                        |
| 3. Understand the influence of relationships on well-being and self esteem                 | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain the effects of supportive relationships and social networks on an individual's well-being and self esteem</li> <li>3.2 Analyse the impact of difficult relationships on an individual's well-being and self esteem</li> </ul> |
| Additional information about this unit (a  | nplification for assessment criteria)  |
| <b>Influences:</b><br>Social factors; economic factors; cultural factor                    | s; psychological factors; physical factors.  |
| Unit aim(s)  | This unit provides the learner with the<br>knowledge required to understand supportive<br>relationships and social networks in adult<br>care settings, and how they can affect an<br>individual's well-being and self-esteem.                      |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | N/A  |



| Titl | e:   | indiv | 50/0854 Provide support for<br>viduals within a shared lives<br>ngement  |
|------|--|-------|--|
| Lev  | rel:   | 3     |  |
| Cre  | dit Value:   | 5     |  |
| Cal  | culated GLH:   | 35    |  |
| Lea  | Irning Outcomes  | Asse  | essment Criteria   |
|      | e learner will:  | The   | learner can:   |
| 1.   | Understand how to establish the needs<br>of an individual                          | 1.2   | Explain the importance of getting to<br>know the individual<br>Identify sources of information that can<br>inform the process<br>Explain the importance of supporting an<br>individual to communicate their own<br>background, experiences, wishes and<br>preferences  |
| 2.   | Address an individual's needs through a shared lives arrangement                   |       | Work with the individual and others to<br>assess how identified requirements can<br>be met within the <b>shared lives</b><br><b>arrangement</b><br>Work with the individual and others to<br>identify barriers that may affect the<br>individual's integration into the home   |
| 3.   | Know how to address potential power<br>imbalances in a shared lives<br>arrangement | 3.2   | environment<br>Explain how sharing own home may<br>create a sense of power imbalance<br>between an individual and <b>key people</b><br>Identify ways that potential power<br>imbalances may be addressed to<br>promote full membership of the<br>household<br>Identify strategies that could be used to<br>address conflicts and disagreements |
| 4.   | Assist individuals to adjust to the home<br>environment                            |       | Provide a welcoming and supportive<br>environment for an individual with the<br>help of key people<br>Provide opportunities for the individual<br>to meet and get to know key people<br>Support the individual to settle into the<br>home environment  |



|    |  | 4.4<br>4.5 | Support the individual to communicate<br>their thoughts and feelings about<br>sharing the home environment<br>Describe actions to take if an individual |
|----|--|------------|---|
|    |  |            | is distressed   |
|    |  | 4.6        | Provide opportunities for the individual's<br>continued personal and social<br>development  |
| 5. | Support key people to adjust to a shared lives arrangement   | 5.1        | Establish with key people any<br>adjustments that might need to be<br>made to support an individual within the<br>home                                  |
|    |  | 5.2        | Establish strategies to deal with any conflict and disagreements that may arise   |
|    |  | 5.3        | Work with the individual and key people<br>to agree 'house rules' in order to<br>minimise potential difficulties  |
|    |  | 5.4        | Describe ways to balance the needs of key people and the individual   |
|    |  | 5.5        | Support key people to participate in the shared lives arrangement   |
| 6. | Contribute to ongoing review of the shared lives arrangement | 6.1        | Provide regular feedback on the shared<br>lives arrangement in line with <b>agreed</b><br><b>ways of working</b>  |
|    |  | 6.2        | Work with the individual, key people<br>and those organising the shared lives<br>arrangement to review its effectiveness                                |

Shared lives arrangements may include:

- Long term accommodation support
- Short breaks
- Day time support
- Kinship support
- Adult placement (Wales)

Key people may include:

- Those who share the learner's home
- Members of learner's extended family
- Learner's social networks
- Others who may be involved in the shared lives arrangement

Agreed ways of working will include policies and procedures where these exist



| Unit aim(s)                             | This unit provides the knowledge and skills    |
|---|--|
|   | required for those supporting an individual    |
|   | within a shared lives arrangement.             |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Assessment criteria 2.1, 2.2, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3,   |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | 4.4, 4.5, 4.6, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.5 and 6.1, 6.2 |
| appropriate)                            | must be assessed in a real work                |
|   | environment.                                   |
|   | This qualification must be assessed in         |
|   | accordance with the Assessment Principles      |
|   | developed by Skills for Care and               |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual               |
|   | requirements.                                  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | HSC 334  |
| and relevant national occupational      |  |
| standards                               |  |



| Title:   | D/650/0872 Enable individuals to<br>negotiate different environments   |  |
|--|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |  |
| Credit Value:  | 3  |  |
| Calculated GLH:  | 20   |  |
| Learning Outcomes  | Assessment Criteria  |  |
| The learner will:  | The learner can:   |  |
| 1. Understand factors that can affect an individual negotiating environments   | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain how conditions and disabilities impact on individuals</li> <li>1.2 Explain how barriers to individuals can be minimised</li> </ul>  |  |
| <ol> <li>Support an individual to negotiate<br/>environments</li> </ol>        | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain own role and responsibilities in relation to supporting an individual</li> <li>2.2 Identify the <b>resources</b> that are available to support an individual</li> <li>2.3 Assess the risks associated with an individual negotiating: <ul> <li>familiar environments</li> <li>unfamiliar environments</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.4 Work with <b>others</b> to develop a <b>plan</b> to support an individual</li> <li>2.5 Support an individual to negotiate an environment following the agreed <b>plan</b></li> </ul> |  |
| 3. Review the support provided to an individual to negotiate an environment    | <ul> <li>3.1 Observe and record an individual's ability</li> <li>3.2 Review a plan to negotiate an environment using: <ul> <li>records of observation</li> <li>feedback from an individual</li> <li>feedback from others</li> </ul> </li> <li>3.3 Reflect on own contribution in supporting an individual</li> </ul>   |  |
| Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria) |  |  |
| Conditions and/or disabilities, could include factors relating to:             |  |  |

**Conditions and/or disabilities** could include factors relating to:

- Sensory loss
- Physical health
- Mental health
- Physical disability
- Learning difficulty/disability
- Emotional health



**Others** could include:

- Other professionals
- Friends
- Carers / family members
- Advocates
- Colleagues

The **plan** will be person centred and will include:

- Risk assessment and could include:
- Environmental hazards
- Agreed methods of communication
- Level of support required
- Assistive technology / aids
- Other resources

| Unit aim(s)  | The purpose of this unit is to provide the<br>learner with the knowledge, understanding<br>and skills required to support individuals to<br>negotiate familiar and unfamiliar<br>environments.  |
|--|---|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | Assessment criteria 2.3, 2.4, 2.5 and 3.1, 3.2<br>must be assessed in a real work<br>environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | N/A   |



| Title:  | F/618/5096 Prepare to support<br>individuals within a shared lives<br>arrangement  |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 3  |
| Credit Value:   | 5  |
| GLH:  | 31   |
| Learning Outcomes   | Assessment Criteria  |
| The learner will:   | The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand how <b>shared lives</b><br><b>arrangements</b> can benefit individuals  | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe the potential benefits to<br/>individuals of being supported through a<br/>shared lives arrangement</li> <li>1.2 Explain how a shared lives arrangement<br/>can promote person centred support<br/>that enables individuals to take<br/>responsibility for decisions about their<br/>lives and actions</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Be able to access and share information<br/>relevant to the provision of a shared<br/>lives arrangement for individuals</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Establish with the people organising the provision of a shared lives arrangement the information and support required by key people and self</li> <li>2.2 Access information and guidance about the rights, duties and responsibilities of those involved in providing a shared lives arrangement</li> <li>2.3 Share with key people information and guidance about the rights, duties of those involved in providing a shared negotiation and guidance about the rights, duties and responsibilities of those involved in providing a shared negotiation and guidance about the rights, duties and responsibilities of those involved in providing a shared lives arrangement</li> </ul> |
| <ol> <li>Be able to address the potential impact<br/>on key people of providing a shared<br/>lives arrangement</li> </ol>                   | <ul> <li>3.1 Establish with key people the potential effects on their lives of providing a shared lives arrangement for an individual</li> <li>3.2 Establish with key people any concerns and issues in relation to providing a shared lives arrangement for an individual</li> <li>3.3 Agree any changes required in order to provide a shared lives arrangement for individuals</li> <li>3.4 Identify with key people strategies for dealing with any potential areas of conflict</li> </ul>   |



| <ol> <li>Be able to carry out an analysis of own<br/>development needs before supporting<br/>an individual in a shared lives<br/>arrangement</li> </ol>  | <ul> <li>4.1 Evaluate own knowledge,<br/>understanding and skills in relation to<br/>supporting an individual in a shared<br/>lives arrangement</li> <li>4.2 Investigate ways to fill gaps in own<br/>knowledge, understanding and skills</li> </ul> |
|--|--|
| <ul> <li>Additional information about this unit (an Shared lives arrangements may include:</li> <li>Long term accommodation support</li> <li>Short breaks/Respite</li> <li>Day time support/Night time support</li> <li>Kinship support</li> <li>Adult placement</li> <li>Key people may include:</li> <li>Those who share the individuals home</li> <li>Members of the individuals extended family</li> <li>The individuals' social networks</li> <li>Others who may be involved in the shared</li> </ul> |  |
| Unit aim(s) Assessment requirements specified by   | This unit provides the knowledge and skills<br>required for those preparing to support an<br>individual within a shared lives arrangement.<br>Learning outcomes 2, 3 and 4 must be   |
| a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)  | assessed in a real work environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.                                 |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards   | N/A  |



| Title:  | F/616/5317 Maintain the independent advocacy relationship  |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 3  |
| Credit Value:   | 6  |
| GLH:  | 33   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:                        | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1. Know what to do when faced with practice dilemmas          | <ol> <li>1.1 Identify a range of ethical and practical challenges commonly faced by advocates</li> <li>1.2 Develop a plan or strategy to respond to a range of challenges and threats</li> <li>1.3 Identify a range of people who can offer support in responding to dilemmas and threats</li> </ol> |
| 2. Be able to deal positively with conflict                   | <ul> <li>2.1 Identify a range of situations and people where conflict may arise in your working role</li> <li>2.2 Develop positive strategies in resolving conflict</li> </ul>   |
| 3. Maintain accurate records                                  | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain the importance of recording and maintaining accurate records</li> <li>3.2 Identify a range of information which is relevant and is irrelevant</li> <li>3.3 Use appropriate templates to record information</li> </ul>   |
| 4. Be able to prioritise competing work commitments           | <ul><li>4.1 Identify essential and non-essential advocacy tasks</li><li>4.2 Prioritise competing commitments and tasks</li></ul>   |
| 5. Be able to use personal value base and power appropriately | <ul> <li>5.1 Explain personal motivation and the importance of providing Independent Advocacy Support</li> <li>5.2 Identify own personal values in relation to mental health, disability, human rights, participation and best interests</li> <li>5.3 Identify sources of personal power</li> </ul>  |



| <ol> <li>Be able to use supervision as a tool to<br/>reflect and improve practice</li> </ol> | 6.1 Explain the purpose and function of<br>supervision  |
|--|---|
|  | 6.2 Identify methods of preparing for<br>supervision  |
|  | 6.3 Participate in supervision  |
|  | 6.4 Use self-reflection to explore the advocacy practice  |
|  | 6.5 Use supervision to identify opportunities to improve skills and knowledge   |
|  | 6.6 Use supervision to explore emotional<br>and practical challenges  |
| 7. Be able to use local and national<br>networks   | 7.1 Identify the role of local and national networks  |
|  | 7.2 Access support from local and national<br>networks  |
|  | 7.3 Contribute to the work of local and<br>national networks  |
| 8. Be able to respond to concerns of abuse   | 8.1 Identify potential safeguarding   |
|  | 8.2 Explain protection procedures   |
|  | 8.3 Explain how to use the advocacy   |
|  | organisation's protection policy to respond to concerns of abuse  |
|  | 8.4 Ensure the individual receiving<br>advocacy support is empowered to have<br>their voice heard through protection<br>processes |
|  | 8.5 Support the individual uphold their right to be heard   |
| Additional information about this unit (ar   | nplification for assessment criteria)   |
| N/A  |   |
| Unit aim(s)  | The unit examines the relationship between  |
|  | an Independent Advocate and the individual  |
|  | receiving advocacy support. It aims to equip  |
|  | the learner with the skills to maintain an<br>independent and client led relationship whilst                                      |
|  | developing an understanding of the  |
|  | limitations of the role.  |
| Assessment requirements specified by   | Assessment criteria 1.2, 3.3, 4.2, 6.3,   |
| a sector or regulatory body (if  | 6.4, 6.5, 6.6, 7.2, 7.3, 8.4, 8.5 need to   |
| appropriate)   | be assessed in the workplace.   |
|  | Use of simulation may only be used in   |
|  | exceptional circumstances and must be<br>discussed with your quality manager on   |
|  | an individual basis.  |
|  |   |



|  | Witness testimony would be the preferred<br>method of gathering evidence if observation<br>is not possible.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.   |
|--|---|
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant National Occupational<br>Standards | <ul> <li>Promote the equality, diversity, rights and responsibilities of individuals</li> <li>Reflect on and evaluate your own values, priorities, interests and effectiveness</li> <li>Develop your knowledge and practice</li> <li>Communicate effectively with individuals and others</li> <li>Contribute to the protection of individuals from harm and abuse</li> <li>Present individuals' needs and preferences</li> <li>Develop practices which promote choice, wellbeing and protection of all individuals</li> </ul> |



| Title:  | M/618/5160 Responding to the advocacy needs of different groups of people   |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 4   |
| GLH:  | 21  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| 1. Make advocacy accessible to individuals  | <ol> <li>1.1 Identify barriers preventing individuals<br/>from accessing advocacy support</li> <li>1.2 Utilise strategies to make advocacy<br/>accessible to different groups</li> </ol>  |
| 2. Understand the impact of medical and social models of disability on the advocacy relationship  | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe medical and social model of disability</li> <li>2.2 Explain how an advocate can use medical and social models of disability within the advocacy relationship</li> </ul>   |
| 3. Promote diversity within the advocacy relationship   | <ul> <li>3.1 Define the terms: <ul> <li>Diversity</li> <li>Discrimination</li> <li>social exclusion</li> </ul> </li> <li>3.2 Demonstrate promotion of diversity in own practice</li> <li>3.3 Challenge discrimination in a way that promotes change</li> </ul>  |
| 4. Use non-instructed advocacy           Additional information about this unit (and the second secon | <ul> <li>4.1 Explain the role of non-instructed advocacy</li> <li>4.2 Use non-instructed advocacy to support an individual</li> <li>4.3 Identify the threats and challenges which may occur when using non-instructed advocacy</li> <li>4.4 Evaluate own role in the advocacy relationship</li> </ul> |
| N/A   |   |
| Unit aim(s)   | The unit equips learners with an<br>understanding of how to respond to the<br>specific advocacy needs of individuals to   |



|   | ensure the                             | ey are included and that their    |
|---|--|-----------------------------------|
|   | needs and                              | preferences are met.              |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in |                                   |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | accordanc                              | e with the Assessment Principles  |
| appropriate)                            | developed                              | by Skills for Care and            |
|   | Developm                               | ent to complement Ofqual          |
|   | requireme                              | ents.                             |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | HSC 330                                | Support individuals to access and |
| and relevant national occupational      |  | use services and facilities       |
| standards                               | HSC 3111                               | Promote the equality, diversity,  |
|   |  | rights and responsibilities of    |
|   |  | individuals                       |
|   | H16                                    | Market and promote the service    |
|   | H136                                   | Communicate effectively with      |
|   |  | individuals and others            |
|   | HSC 367                                | Help individuals identify and     |
|   |  | access independent                |
|   |  | representation and advocacy       |
|   | HSC 368                                | Present individuals' needs and    |
|   |  | preferences                       |
|   | MH 43                                  | Challenge injustice and           |
|   |  | inequalities in access to         |
|   |  | mainstream provision for          |
|   |  | individuals with mental health    |
|   |  | needs                             |



| Title:  | Y/650/1446 Provide independent<br>advocacy support   |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 4  |
| Credit Value:   | 6  |
| GLH:  | 35   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1. Establish safe boundaries to maintain<br>the advocacy relationship           | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain the advocacy role to a range of people receiving advocacy support</li> <li>1.2 Conduct an introductory meeting which establishes key principles of independent advocacy</li> <li>1.3 Identify issues that can impact on the advocacy relationship</li> <li>1.4 Analyse limitations to the independent advocacy role</li> </ul>  |
| 2. Establish the advocacy relationship  | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain the potential benefits of advocacy to the individual</li> <li>2.2 Explain and establish appropriate boundaries</li> <li>2.3 Identify where advocacy support is appropriate</li> <li>2.4 Establish the individual's requirements in relation to advocacy</li> <li>2.5 Explain the complaints procedure of the advocacy service to the individual</li> </ul>  |
| 3. Assist the individual receiving advocacy support to explore and make choices | <ul> <li>3.1 Identify that clear support has been given for the individual to access information and enable them to make an informed choice</li> <li>3.2 Support the individual to explore possible consequences of making a particular choice</li> <li>3.3 Distinguish between the advocate's view and the choice made by the individual</li> <li>3.4 Support the individual to make informed choices including decisions that may be considered unwise using the principles of independent advocacy</li> </ul> |
| 4. Formulate a plan of action   | 4.1 Construct a plan to support an individual  |



|  | 4.2 Agree a plan of action with the          |
|--|--|
|  | individual receiving advocacy support        |
|  | 4.3 Identify the key individuals who will be |
|  | involved in achieving the plan               |
|  | 4.4 Provide ongoing feedback to the          |
|  | individual                                   |
|  | 4.5 Review the plan of action with the       |
|  | individual                                   |
|  | 4.6 Identify who to seek advice from when    |
|  | the action plan is threatened                |
| 5. Support the individual to self-advocate | 5.1 Summarise the benefits of self-advocacy  |
|  | 5.2 Demonstrate a range of techniques to     |
|  | support an individual to self-advocate       |
|  | 5.3 Take action to help individuals achieve  |
|  | their goals                                  |
| 6. Act on the instruction of the person    | 6.1 Identify the wishes and feelings of an   |
| receiving advocacy support                 | individual receiving advocacy support        |
|  | 6.2 Agree a preferred course of action with  |
|  | the individual receiving advocacy            |
|  | support                                      |
|  | 6.3 Provide feedback on the actions taken    |
|  | to support the individual                    |
| 7. Review and disengage from the           | 7.1 Support the individual to assess the     |
| advocacy relationship                      | outcomes of the advocacy relationship        |
|  | 7.2 Support the individual to establish if   |
|  | further assistance is needed                 |
|  | 7.3 Explain when and how to end the          |
|  | advocacy relationship                        |
|  | 7.4 Record the outcomes in line with         |
|  | organisational policies and guidance         |
| Additional information about this unit (a) | mulification for accordment criteria)        |
| Additional information about this unit (a  | inplification for assessment criteria)       |
| N/A  |  |
|  |  |
| Unit aim(s)                                | This unit focuses on the practicalities of   |
|  | offering Independent Advocacy support. It    |
|  | aims to develop the skills which will enable |
|  | candidates to establish safe boundaries      |
|  | within the Independent Advocacy              |
|  | relationship. It also addresses practical    |
|  | strategies to ensure effective outcomes for  |
|  | the person receiving advocacy support.       |
| Assessment requirements specified by       | This qualification must be assessed in       |
| a sector or regulatory body (if            | accordance with the Assessment Principles    |
| appropriate)                               | developed by Skills for Care and             |
|  |  |



|   | Development to complement Ofqual              |
|---|---|
|   | requirements.                                 |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit is mapped to National Occupational  |
| and relevant national occupational      | Standards:                                    |
| standards                               | HSC 330: Support individuals to access and    |
|   | use services and facilities                   |
|   | HSC 3111: Promote the equality, diversity,    |
|   | rights and responsibilities of individuals    |
|   | AHP 17: Assist and support individuals to use |
|   | total communication systems                   |
|   | HSC 31: Promote effective communication       |
|   | for and about individuals                     |
|   | HSC 41: Use and develop methods and           |
|   | systems to record and report                  |
|   | HSC 366: Support individuals to represent     |
|   | their own needs and wishes at decision        |
|   | making forums                                 |
|   | HSC 368: Present individuals' needs and       |
|   | preferences                                   |
|   | CHS 99: Refer individuals to specialist       |
|   | services for treatment and care               |
|   | PE 1: Enable individuals to make health       |
|   | choices and decisions                         |



| Title | ::   | J/650/0866 The purpose and principles<br>of independent advocacy   |
|-------|--|--|
| Leve  | 21:  | 3  |
| Crec  | lit Value:   | 5  |
| Calc  | ulated GLH:  | 30   |
| Lear  | ning Outcomes  | Assessment Criteria  |
| The   | learner will:  | The learner can:   |
| 1.    | Understand Independent Advocacy  | <ol> <li>1.1 Define Independent Advocacy</li> <li>1.2 Identify the different steps within the<br/>advocacy process</li> <li>1.3 Explain when Independent Advocacy<br/>can and cannot help</li> <li>1.4 Identify services Independent<br/>Advocates commonly signpost to</li> <li>1.5 Explain the difference between<br/>advocacy provided by Independent<br/>Advocates and other people</li> </ol> |
| 2.    | Explain principles and values<br>underpinning Independent Advocacy         | 2.1 Explain the <b>key principles</b>  |
| 3.    | Describe the development of advocacy                                       | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain the purpose of Independent<br/>Advocacy</li> <li>3.2 Identify milestones in the history of<br/>advocacy</li> <li>3.3 Explain the wider policy context of<br/>advocacy</li> </ul>  |
| 4.    | Explain types of advocacy support and their purpose                        | <ul><li>4.1 Compare advocacy models</li><li>4.2 Identify the commonalities and differences in advocacy models</li></ul>  |
| 5.    | Understand the roles and<br>responsibilities of an Independent<br>Advocate | <ul> <li>5.1 Explain roles and responsibilities within<br/>Independent Advocacy</li> <li>5.2 Describe the limits and boundaries of an<br/>Independent Advocate</li> <li>5.3 Describe the skills, attitudes and<br/>personal attributes of an advocate</li> <li>5.4 Identify when and who to seek advice<br/>from when faced with dilemmas</li> </ul>   |
| 6.    | Understand advocacy standards  | <ul> <li>6.1 Describe standards which apply to<br/>Independent Advocacy</li> <li>6.2 Explain how standards can impact on<br/>the advocacy role and service</li> </ul>  |



# Key principles include:

- Putting the people first who use the service
- Advocacy is independent from the service the individual accesses
- Awareness that independent advocacy is accountable
- Conflicts of interest are avoided
- To make sure that independent advocacy is accessible

|   | This should be a file because the second     |
|---|--|
| Unit aim(s)                             | This unit aims to provide learners with an   |
|   | understanding of what Independent            |
|   | Advocacy is and how to use the values and    |
|   | principles which underpin good practice. The |
|   | unit focuses on the different models of      |
|   | advocacy, their history and why they exist.  |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in       |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | accordance with the Assessment Principles    |
| appropriate)                            | developed by Skills for Care and             |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual             |
|   | requirements.                                |
| Details of the relationship of the unit |  |
| and relevant national occupational      |  |
| standards                               |  |



| Title:  | F/618/5163 Test for substance misuse  |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 4   |
| GLH:  | 30  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:                                | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Prepare to test individuals for substance<br/>use</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Identify those individuals to be tested<br/>for substance misuse and make<br/>arrangements for tests to be witnessed<br/>or verified, where required</li> <li>1.2 Demonstrate that the environment in<br/>which the tests are to be carried out,<br/>and the procedures to be used comply<br/>with safeguarding and health, safety<br/>and security policies, and afford privacy<br/>and dignity</li> <li>1.3 Confirm that individuals being tested<br/>understand the purpose of the tests,<br/>their rights, and any consequences of<br/>not cooperating with the testing<br/>procedures</li> <li>1.4 Provide opportunities for individuals to<br/>describe their substance use and<br/>explain possible false positives before<br/>they are tested</li> <li>1.5 Obtain the individuals consent for</li> </ul> |
|   | testing procedures<br>1.6 Explain clearly and precisely to<br>individuals what they have to do in   |
| 2. Test for substances  | order to provide their samples<br>2.1 Take the appropriate samples (e.g.<br>breath, urine, blood, hair, saliva)<br>according to clinical and organisational<br>policies and procedures  |
|   | <ul> <li>2.2 Test samples, or refer them for testing, in accordance with clinical and organisational policies and procedures</li> <li>2.3 Follow the supplier's/manufacturer's instructions for use of testing equipment, where appropriate</li> </ul>  |



|  | <ul> <li>2.4 Dispose of samples and equipment safely, in accordance with clinical and organisational policies and procedures</li> <li>2.5 Explain the possible causes of false readings in the different types of tests carried out</li> </ul>   |
|--|--|
| <ol> <li>Communicate outcomes of testing for<br/>substances</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>3.1 Communicate the outcomes of the tests to individuals, and their carers or guardians where required, and ensure they understand the consequences of the outcome</li> <li>3.2 Obtain individual's informed consent when test results are to be shared with other practitioners</li> <li>3.3 Complete accurate records of tests and associated reports in accordance with organisational policy and procedure</li> </ul> |

## **Evidence Requirements for this unit:**

You must provide your assessor with evidence for **all** the learning outcomes and assessment criteria. The evidence must be provided in the following ways taking into account any of the special considerations below.

# **Special Considerations:**

Simulation **is not permitted** for this unit.

The nature of this unit means that **all** of your evidence must come from real work activities.

The evidence must reflect, at all times, the policies and procedures of the workplace, as linked to current legislation and the values and principles for good practice in the sector.

### Required sources of performance and knowledge evidence:

**Observation and/or Expert Witness Testimony** is the **required** assessment method to be used to evidence some part of this unit.

If your assessor is unable to observe you s/he will identify an expert witness in your workplace who will provide testimony of your work-based performance. Your assessor or expert witness will observe you in real work activities and this is likely to provide most of the evidence for the assessment criteria for this unit.

### Other sources of performance and knowledge evidence:

The following assessment criteria may be difficult to evidence by observation and/or expert witness testimony because they refer to contingencies or infrequently occurring activities:

### **Unit Guidance**



The evidence for this unit is likely to come from:

a. The observation of the candidate carrying out a test with an individual.

b. Test result records

c. The candidate's explanation of their work with an individual recorded either through professional discussion or a reflective account

| Unit aim(s)                             | This unit is about testing individuals to see if |
|---|--|
|   | they have been using substances, including       |
|   | alcohol and controlled drugs.                    |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in           |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | accordance with the Assessment Principles        |
| appropriate)                            | developed by Skills for Care and                 |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual                 |
|   | requirements.                                    |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit is directly related to the Skills for  |
| and relevant national occupational      | Health/DANOS national occupational               |
| standards                               | standard:  |
|   | AE1 Test for substance use                       |
|   | This also appears in Health and Social Care      |
|   | Standards as HSC363.                             |



| Title:  | K/650/0858 Support individuals through detoxification programmes   |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 4  |
| Credit Value:   | 5  |
| Calculated GLH:   | 31   |
| Learning Outcomes   | Assessment Criteria  |
| The learner will:   | The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand how assessments should be<br/>undertaken</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain how requests for assessment<br/>should be prioritised in line with an<br/>organisation's criteria</li> <li>1.2 Describe how to arrange for a<br/>comprehensive substance review and<br/>risk assessment</li> <li>1.3 Describe how individuals may be<br/>involved in the assessment of their<br/>needs</li> <li>1.4 Explain how individual motivation and<br/>readiness to engage in a treatment<br/>programme are assessed</li> <li>1.5 Explain how information obtained<br/>during an assessment should be passed<br/>to another organisation in line with local<br/>protocols</li> <li>1.6 Explain why it is important to assess<br/>and review risk to individuals and others<br/>from substance misuse on a regular</li> </ul> |
| 2. Introduce individuals to detoxification programmes                   | <ul> <li>basis</li> <li>2.1 Implement the locally agreed criteria for<br/>admission of individuals to a<br/>detoxification programme</li> <li>2.2 Explain what should be taken into<br/>account to establish the correct level of<br/>urgency for admission to a<br/>detoxification programme</li> </ul>   |
|   | <ul> <li>detoxification programme</li> <li>2.3 Demonstrate the advice and information that should be provided to individuals prior to a detoxification programme</li> <li>2.4 Describe what a "contract of care" includes and the respective responsibilities of the individual and the service during a detoxification programme</li> </ul>   |



|   | 2.5 Demonstrate ways in which significant  |
|---|--|
|   | others and carers may become involved  |
|   | in an individual's detoxification  |
| 3. Develop and review detoxification and  | 3.1 Demonstrate how to coordinate  |
| care plans                                | detoxification treatment within a care   |
|   | plan which involves the individual and   |
|   | members of other service teams as  |
|   | appropriate  |
|   | 3.2 Show how to review expectations and  |
|   | plans with individuals who are not yet   |
|   | able to complete the detoxification  |
|   | <ul><li>programme</li><li>3.3 Review assessments at appropriate</li></ul>            |
|   | intervals once an individual has   |
|   | commenced a programme of care  |
|   | 3.4 Describe the evidence base for the likely  |
|   | outcomes of detoxification programmes  |
| 4. Manage closure of individuals'         | 4.1 Arrange a discharge planning meeting   |
| detoxification programmes                 | with members from other service<br>providers in order to formalise an                |
|   | ongoing care plan  |
|   | 4.2 Establish active co-operation between  |
|   | detoxification and rehabilitative services   |
|   | after discharge  |
|   | 4.3 Complete case closure information  |
|   | promptly and accurately for individuals  |
|   | who have achieved abstinence and left  |
|   | the programme  |
| Additional information about this unit (a | nplification for assessment criteria)  |
|   |  |
| N/A                                       |  |
| Unit aim(s)                               | This unit is about working with individuals to                                       |
|   | achieve stabilisation or withdrawal from   |
|   | alcohol, drug and substance misuse through   |
|   | a planned programme of treatment and care.   |
|   | This will involve inducting individuals to detoxification programmes, developing and |
|   | reviewing these programmes, and managing   |
|   | the closure of the programme and next  |
|   | steps.   |
| Assessment requirements specified by      | Assessment criteria 2.1, 2.3, 2.5, 3.1, 3.3,   |
| a sector or regulatory body (if           | 3.5 and 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 must be assessed in a  |
| appropriate)                              | real work environment.   |
|   | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles  |
|   | accordance was the Assessment i findpies   |



|   | developed by Skills for Care and           |
|---|--|
|   | Development to complement Ofqual           |
|   | requirements.                              |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | AH7 Support individuals through            |
| and relevant national occupational      | detoxification programmes.                 |
| standards                               | The original AH7 appears in the Health and |
|   | Social Care Standards as HSC381 Support    |
|   | individuals through detoxification         |
|   | programmes.                                |



| Title:  | A/618/5081 Increasing awareness<br>about drugs, alcohol or other<br>substances   |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 3  |
| Credit Value:   | 7  |
| GLH:  | 42   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1. Understand legislation and government<br>policy relating to substance use  | <ol> <li>1.1 Define legal and illegal drugs</li> <li>1.2 Explain the legislation which relates to<br/>substance use</li> <li>1.3 Explain government policy in relation to<br/><b>substance use services</b></li> <li>1.4 Identify organisations designed to<br/>deliver the government's strategy on<br/>drug and alcohol use.</li> <li>1.5 Explain the legislation, policy and<br/>procedures in relation to substance use<br/>regarding:         <ul> <li>equality</li> <li>confidentiality of information</li> </ul> </li> </ol>  |
| <ol> <li>Understand substance use, its effects<br/>and treatments</li> </ol>  | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain the different substances and their effects on the body</li> <li>2.2 Identify the commonly known terms for substances, and how these change over time and in different locations</li> <li>2.3 Explain the dangers of substance use</li> <li>2.4 Explain the associated risks of different methods of substance use</li> <li>2.5 Explain the inter-relationship between the circumstances of individuals and the effect of substances on them</li> <li>2.6 Explain reasons why individuals use substances</li> <li>2.7 Explain the relationship between substance use, crime and antisocial behavior</li> </ul> |
| 3. Identify individuals' knowledge of and values in relation to substance use | <ul> <li>3.1 Enable individuals to talk about what they know and understand about substance use:</li> <li>individually</li> </ul>  |



|   | <ul><li>within group settings</li><li>3.2 Support individuals to explore their</li></ul> |
|---|--|
|   | feelings and values in relation to   |
|   | substance use:   |
|   | <ul> <li>individually</li> </ul>   |
|   | <ul> <li>within group settings</li> </ul>  |
|   | 3.3 Interact with individuals using a person-  |
|   | centered approach  |
| 4. Increase individuals' knowledge and    | 4.1 Explain why individuals' may have gaps   |
| understanding of substance use            | in their knowledge and understanding   |
|   | about substances, their use and effects  |
|   | 4.2 Explain when the values and beliefs of   |
|   | individuals need to be challenged in   |
|   | their own interests and those of others  |
|   | <ul> <li>individually</li> </ul>   |
|   | <ul> <li>in group settings</li> </ul>  |
|   | 4.3 Implement learning opportunities to  |
|   | meet individuals' needs  |
|   | <ul> <li>individually</li> </ul>   |
|   | <ul> <li>in group settings</li> </ul>  |
|   | 4.4 Review and revise the content of the   |
|   | learning provision to ensure it is   |
|   | accurate and based on up-to-date   |
|   | evidence of individuals' needs   |
| Additional information about this unit (a | nplification for assessment criteria)  |

Substance use services e.g. prevention, treatment and rehabilitation

Substances e.g. stimulants, sedatives and hallucinogenic products

**Circumstances**: e.g. experience and expectations, mental and psychological state, physical health, etc.

Reasons: e.g. age, gender, socioeconomic status, emotional wellbeing

| Unit aim(s)                          | This unit is for those who need to raise      |
|--------------------------------------|---|
|                                      | awareness about substances their use and      |
|                                      | effects. The awareness raising may be with    |
|                                      | children and young people, other individuals  |
|                                      | and groups                                    |
| Assessment requirements specified by | Any skills based element within the unit must |
| a sector or regulatory body (if      | be assessed in the workplace or using         |
| appropriate)                         | workplace based evidence.                     |
|                                      | This qualification must be assessed in        |
|                                      | accordance with the Assessment Principles     |
|                                      | developed by Skills for Care and              |



|   | Development to complement Ofqual                |
|---|---|
|   | requirements.                                   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This Unit is directly related to the Skills for |
| and relevant national occupational      | Health/DANOS national occupational              |
| standards                               | standard:                                       |
|   | AD1 Raise awareness about substances, their     |
|   | use and effects                                 |
|   | This also appears in Health and Social Care     |
|   | Standards as HSC365.                            |



| Tit | le:   | the | 50/0855 Help individuals address<br>ir substance misuse through an<br>ion plan                     |
|-----|---|-----|--|
| Lev | /el:  | 3   |  |
| Cre | edit Value:   | 4   |  |
| Ca  | culated GLH:  | 28  |  |
|     | arning Outcomes   | Ass | essment Criteria   |
| The | e learner will:   | The | learner can:   |
| 1.  | Understand the background relating to substance misuse to support the |     | Explain possible reasons for substance misuse  |
|     | development of an action plan   | 1.2 | that substance users may have  |
|     |   |     | Describe the behaviours that you may<br>experience from substance users                            |
|     |   |     | Describe the risks substance users may<br>pose to themselves and others                            |
|     |   |     | Explain how to minimise the risks  |
|     |   | 1.0 | Explain the possible implications of mental health issues in relation to                           |
|     |   | 1.7 | substance misuse<br>Identify examples of substance misuse  |
|     |   |     | terminology  |
| 2.  | Develop an action plan with individuals                               | 2.1 | Provide opportunities for the individual<br>to contribute to the development of the<br>action plan |
|     |   | 2.2 | Support the individual to understand the information provided                                      |
|     |   | 2.3 | Agree the process for reviewing the action plan with the individual                                |
|     |   | 2.4 | Provide an action plan that reflects the current circumstances of the individual                   |
|     |   | 2.5 | Record the action plan according to<br>agreed ways of working                                      |
| 3.  | Review the action plan with individuals                               | 3.1 | Gather and record information relating   |
|     |   | 3.2 | to individual's progress<br>Provide opportunities to review the                                    |
|     |   | J.2 | action plan with an individual   |
|     |   | 3.3 | Identify with the individual the   |
|     |   |     | outcomes that have been met and  |
|     |   | 3.4 | those still to be achieved<br>Identify and agree the next stages with                              |
|     |   |     | the individual   |



| Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)             |   |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|
| Agreed ways of working will include policies and procedures where these exist              |   |  |  |
| Unit aim(s)  | This unit is aimed at those who support<br>individuals with drug or alcohol problems to<br>develop and review their action plans.   |  |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | Learning outcomes 2 and 3 must be<br>assessed in a real work environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |  |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | HSC 431 (DANOS A12)   |  |  |



| Title:  | A/650/1447 Provide support services<br>to those affected by someone else's<br>substance use   |  |
|---|---|--|
| Level:  | 3   |  |
| Credit Value:   | 4   |  |
| GLH:  | 24  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| 1. Understand the legislation, policies and practice relevant to working with children, young people and families affected by substance use | <ol> <li>Explain the legislation relevant to<br/>working with children, young people<br/>and families</li> <li>Explain workplace policies and practices<br/>relevant to working with children young<br/>people and families</li> </ol>  |  |
| <ol><li>Know about the available support<br/>services and how to access them</li></ol>  | <ul> <li>2.1 Describe the forms of support which are available</li> <li>2.2 Describe relevant agencies and services available locally</li> <li>2.3 Explain how to access agencies and services in the local area</li> </ul>   |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand issues that affect children,<br/>and young people within families<br/>affected by substance use</li> </ol>              | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain the family structures which exist</li> <li>3.2 Explain how family dynamics work.</li> <li>3.3 Explain issues that may affect children<br/>and young people within families<br/>affected by substance use</li> <li>3.4 Explain the support that is available and<br/>how to make this accessible to children<br/>and young people affected by someone<br/>else's substance use</li> </ul> |  |
| <ol> <li>Identify options for individuals affected<br/>by someone else's substance use</li> </ol>   | <ul> <li>4.1 Describe motivational techniques used to support individuals affected by substance use</li> <li>4.2 Support the individual to: <ul> <li>identify issues concerning them</li> <li>explore and consider the options available to them</li> <li>plan realistic goals</li> </ul> </li> <li>4.3 Assist the individual to access the required services</li> </ul>                                      |  |
| 5. Support individuals affected by someone else's substance use to review the effectiveness of selected options                             | <ul><li>5.1 Support the individual to review:</li><li>progress</li><li>the support obtained</li></ul>   |  |



|   | 5.2 Complete reports and store records which maintain the individual's   |
|---|--|
|   | confidentiality  |
| Additional information about this unit (a   | mplification for assessment criteria)  |
| An <b>individual</b> is someone requiring care or su  | pport  |
| Others may include:<br>• Carers<br>• Families<br>• Friends<br>• Care and support workers<br>• Specialist Nurses |  |
| Unit aim(s)   | This Unit is for those who provide services to<br>those who may be affected by someone<br>else's drug, alcohol or substance use.   |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)                         | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards                      | This Unit is directly related to the Skills for<br>Health/DANOS national occupational<br>standard:<br>AB7 Provide services to those affected by<br>some else's substance use.<br>This also appears in Health and Social Care<br>Standards as HSC391. |



| Titl | e:  | indi       | 18/5141 Assist with the transfer of viduals who misuse substances ween agencies and services  |
|------|---|------------|---|
| Lev  | rel:  | 3          |   |
| Cre  | dit Value:  | 3          |   |
| GLI  | 1:  | 20         |   |
|      | arning Outcomes<br>e learner will:  |            | essment Criteria<br>learner can:  |
| 1.   | Understand how legislation and<br>organisational policies underpin the<br>transfer of individuals between agencies<br>and service | 1.2        | Describe legislation that impacts on<br>arrangements for referring or<br>transferring individuals between<br>services<br>Explain how organisational policies<br>influence transfer arrangements   |
| 2.   | Apply agency and service procedures<br>when preparing people for transfer   |            | Obtain and utilise the necessary<br>information about transfer<br>arrangements<br>Prepare an individual for transfer in<br>accordance with agency and service<br>procedures   |
|      |   | 2.3        | Support individuals and relevant people<br>to seek information and express their<br>views during the process of preparing<br>for a transfer   |
|      |   | 2.3        | Describe the roles and responsibilities of those involved in the transfer   |
|      |   | 2.4        | Identify the agencies requirements for<br>support and monitoring of individuals   |
|      |   | 2.5        |   |
|      |   | 2.6        | Plan arrangements necessary to monitor<br>and review the individual's adjustment<br>to change   |
| 3.   | Be able to liaise with individuals and the<br>agencies and services they are being<br>transferred to                              | 3.1<br>3.2 | Explain the arrangements and reasons<br>for a transfer clearly to individuals and<br>others who might be involved<br>Provide clear and accurate information<br>about the support that will be provided<br>and how people should seek further<br>support should they need it |



|  | <ul> <li>3.3 Provide support to individuals where they may be distressed, anxious or angry</li> <li>3.4 Adapt communication to meet the needs of individuals and the requirements of different agencies</li> </ul>  |
|--|---|
| Additional information about this unit (a  | mplification for assessment criteria)   |
| N/A  |   |
| Unit aim(s)  | This unit is aimed at those who make<br>arrangements to transfer individuals between<br>agencies and services; it includes<br>circumstances where someone may be<br>referred either into or out of a service as well<br>as circumstances where someone is referred<br>within an agency. |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | This unit relates directly to the Skills for<br>Health/DANOS national occupational<br>standard:<br>AG3 Assist with the transfer of individuals<br>between agencies and services<br>The Unit also appears in the Health and<br>Social Care Standards HSC386.                             |



| Title:  | D/650/1448 Supply and exchange injecting equipment for individuals   |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 3  |
| Credit Value:   | 3  |
| GLH:  | 18   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Understand policy and procedures for<br/>the supply and exchange of injecting<br/>equipment</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe organisational policies and procedures for supply and exchange of injecting equipment</li> <li>1.2 Explain policy guidelines and legislation for needle exchange with children, young people and individuals with learning difficulties</li> <li>1.3 Identify the potential benefits of brief interventions with substance users</li> <li>1.4 Describe tbehaviours that can be displayed by substance users, and how to deal with these</li> <li>1.5 Describe how to recognise and deal with immediate risk of danger to individuals who have used substances</li> <li>1.6 Describe blood borne viruses that may affect substance users</li> <li>1.7 Explain what to do in the event of a needle stick injury</li> <li>1.8 Describe substance misuse services available in the local community</li> <li>1.9 Explain legal and organisational procedures and requirements regarding the recording, storage and passing on of information</li> </ul> |
| 2. Conduct initial assessment of substance users and provide relevant advice                                    | <ul><li>2.1 Establish whether the individual is injecting and the frequency of injecting</li><li>2.2 Conduct a health assessment with the individual</li></ul>   |
|   | <ul> <li>2.3 Provide relevant and timely advice</li> <li>2.4 Provide advice and resources for safe storage and disposal of injecting equipment</li> <li>2.5 Refer individuals to other services according to identified need</li> </ul>  |



|    |  | 2.6        | Liaise with providers of other services in line with policies and protocol   |
|----|--|------------|--|
| 3. | Supply and exchange injecting<br>equipment | 3.3<br>3.4 | <ul> <li>Demonstrate that:</li> <li>adequate stocks of injecting<br/>equipment are maintained</li> <li>injecting equipment is stored safely<br/>and securely</li> <li>Dispense injecting equipment to<br/>individuals in line with the assessment<br/>of their needs</li> <li>Demonstrate safe handling of dispensed<br/>and returned injecting equipment</li> <li>Describe how to carry out the exchange<br/>process discreetly to maintain<br/>confidentiality</li> <li>Describe how to deal with any spillages</li> </ul> |
|    |  | 3.6        | <ul> <li>and discarded needles and syringes</li> <li>using the appropriate materials</li> <li>Maintain records of:</li> <li>injecting equipment supply and<br/>exchange in line with organisational<br/>procedures</li> <li>the needle exchange service</li> </ul>   |

## **Evidence Requirements for this unit:**

You must provide your assessor with evidence for all the learning outcomes and assessment criteria. The evidence must be provided in the following ways taking into account any of the special considerations below.

## **Special Considerations:**

Simulation **is not permitted** for this unit.

The evidence must reflect, at all times, the policies and procedures of the workplace, as linked to current legislation and the values and principles for good practice in the sector.

## Required sources of performance and knowledge evidence:

**Observation and/or Expert Witness Testimony** is the **required** assessment method to be used to evidence some part of this unit.

If your assessor is unable to observe you s/he will identify an expert witness in your workplace who will provide testimony of your work-based performance. Your assessor or expert witness will observe you in real work activities and this is likely to provide most of the evidence for the assessment criteria for this unit.



## Other sources of performance and knowledge evidence:

The following assessment criteria may be difficult to evidence by observation and/or expert witness testimony because they refer to contingencies or infrequently occurring activities:

Refer individuals to other services according to identified need.

Your assessor will identify other sources of evidence to ensure that the most reliable and efficient mix of evidence gathering methods from the list below. This will ensure that all learning outcomes and assessment criteria are met and that the consistency of your performance can be established.

**Work Products:** These are non-confidential records made, or contributed to, by you e.g. information leaflets on needle exchange services.

**Confidential Records:** These may be used as evidence but must not be placed in your portfolio. They must remain in their usual location and be referred to in the assessor records in your portfolio e.g. Case records, needle exchange records and Care plans.

**Questioning:** Questions may be oral or written. In each case the question and your answer will need to be recorded e.g. identify the potential benefits of brief interventions with substance users.

**Professional discussion:** This should be in the form of a structured review of your practice with the outcomes captured by means of audiotape or a written summary. These are particularly useful to provide evidence that you know and understand principles which support practice; policies, procedures and legislation, and that you can critically evaluate their application e.g. outline the organisational policies and procedures for supply and exchange of injecting equipment.

**Original Certificates:** Certificates of training and records of attendance must be authentic, current and valid. Your assessor will also want to check the content of such training so that this can be matched to the standards and check that you have retained and can apply learning to practice.

## Case Studies, projects, assignments and candidate/reflective accounts of your work:

These methods are most appropriately used to cover any outstanding areas of your qualification.

Occasionally, because an event happens rarely or may be difficult to observe, you may be able to use a candidate/ reflective account to provide some of the evidence for this unit e.g. how you have liaised with providers of other services in line with policies and protocols.

## Witness Testimony

Colleagues, allied professionals and individuals with whom you work may be able to provide testimony of your performance. Your assessor will help you to identify the appropriate use of witnesses.



## **Unit Guidance**

The evidence for this unit is likely to come from:

- a) The observation of the candidate working with an individual
- b) Confidential care plans and case records, and
- c) The candidate's explanation of their work with this and other individuals recorded either through professional discussion or a reflective account.

## **Advice**

- safe or safer injecting techniques and sites
- harm minimisation
- primary health
- safer sex

| Unit aim(s)   | This unit is for those who supply and<br>exchange injecting equipment for substance<br>users. This involves establishing the extent<br>and type of individuals' injecting behaviour,<br>providing harm minimisation advice,<br>providing injecting equipment and<br>exchanging used injecting equipment. It also<br>includes maintaining records of the supply<br>and exchange of injecting equipment in order<br>that the service can be monitored and |
|---|---|
|   | evaluated.  |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate) | Assessment criteria 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 2.5, 2.6, 3.1,3.2, 3.3, 3.6 must be assessed in a real work environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in accordance with the Assessment Principles developed by Skills for Care and Development to complement Ofqual requirements.  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit   | N/A   |
| and relevant national occupational standards  |   |



| Title:   | J/618/5116 Carry out initial<br>assessments to identify and prioritise<br>the needs of substance misusers  |
|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |
| Credit Value:  | 5  |
| GLH:   | 30   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1. Understand the legislation, policies and practice applicable when working with substance misusers | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain the legislation underpinning service delivery when working with substance misusers</li> <li>1.2 Explain the policies and practices underpinning service delivery when working with substance misusers</li> <li>1.3 Explain the terminology used by substance misusers</li> </ul>  |
| 2. Understand the substances available and their effects   | <ul> <li>2.1 Identify the substances available</li> <li>2.2 Describe the effects of the available substances</li> <li>2.3 Describe indicators of substance misuse.</li> <li>2.4 Explain how to keep knowledge current in relation to substances used</li> </ul>  |
| 3. Be able to evaluate individuals' substance misuse   | <ul> <li>3.1 Explain the importance of carrying out prompt assessment of individuals substance use</li> <li>3.2 Obtain information relating to drug use from the individual and <b>others</b></li> <li>3.3 Carry out the assessment of the individual following <b>agreed ways of working</b></li> <li>3.4 Assess the risk to the individual and others resulting from their substance misuse</li> <li>3.5 Record details of the assessment</li> </ul> |
| <ol> <li>Be able to identify appropriate<br/>interventions</li> </ol>                                | <ul> <li>4.1 Explain available interventions to the individual</li> <li>4.2 Agree a course of action with the individual according to the type of intervention required.</li> </ul>  |



| <ol> <li>Be able to make referrals to substance<br/>misuse services</li> </ol>  | <ul> <li>4.3 Explain how to achieve a balance<br/>between the interests of the individual,<br/>any identified risks and a duty of care.</li> <li>4.4 Justify the choice of intervention<br/>according to locally agreed criteria.</li> <li>4.5 Explain how to ensure consistency of<br/>approach with other members of the<br/>substance misuse team</li> <li>5.1 Explain the importance of referring<br/>individuals to the appropriate service<br/>with the required degree of urgency.</li> <li>5.2 Plan arrangements for the referral with<br/>the individual</li> <li>5.3 Facilitate the individual's contact with<br/>the service.</li> <li>5.4 Make referrals and share information<br/>with services in line with local protocols</li> </ul> |
|---|--|
| <ul> <li>Additional information about this unit (an Others may include:</li> <li>The referring agency</li> <li>Families and Carers</li> <li>Advocates</li> <li>Supervisor, line manager or employer</li> <li>Other professionals</li> </ul> Agreed ways of working: Will include policies |  |
| Unit aim(s)   | The purpose of this unit is to assess the<br>learner's knowledge, understanding and skills<br>in relation to the initial assessment of an<br>individual's substance use. This initial<br>assessment can then lead to referral to other<br>services for appropriate interventions to be<br>implemented.   |
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)   | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements.   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards  | N/A  |



| Title:   | F/650/1449 Support individuals who are substance users   |
|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |
| Credit Value:  | 7  |
| GLH:   | 42   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Understand substances, their effects and<br/>how they might be used</li> </ol>          | <ul> <li>1.1 Identify substances which individuals<br/>might use, how they are used and their<br/>likely effects</li> <li>1.2 Identify short and long term risks<br/>involved with substance use b1.3<br/>Identify and explain current<br/>legislation, policies and guidelines on<br/>the use and storage of substances</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Enable individuals to adopt safe<br/>practices associated with substance use</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain factors that influence individuals to use substances and reasons why individuals decide to reduce or cease substance use</li> <li>2.2 Communicate with individuals to support understanding of their circumstances and history of substance use</li> <li>2.3 Advise individuals on safe practice in methods of substance use and associated activities</li> <li>2.4 Support individuals to dispose of hazardous materials and equipment safely</li> <li>2.5 Describe harm reduction strategies and how and why these may differ from individual to individual</li> <li>2.6 Identify the potential effects and difficulties that are likely to arise in attempting to cease or reduce substance use and the strategies/methods for alleviating them</li> </ul> |
| 3. Support individuals when they have used substances  | 3.1 Identify policies and procedures for the support of individuals who have used substances   |



|                                    | 2.2. Identify the substance used the effect    |
|------------------------------------|--|
|                                    | 3.2 Identify the substance used, the effect    |
|                                    | of the substance and the condition of          |
|                                    | the individual                                 |
|                                    | 3.3 Demonstrate how to make the                |
|                                    | environment as safe as possible,               |
|                                    | including how and when to remove               |
|                                    | individuals for their own safety               |
|                                    | 3.4 Support individuals after the effects of   |
|                                    | the substance have worn off                    |
|                                    | 3.5 Show how and when to request further       |
|                                    | support and assistance                         |
|                                    | 3.6 Report information about episodes of       |
|                                    | substance use to an appropriate person         |
|                                    | and record the use                             |
| 4. Support individuals in reducing | 4.1 Assist individuals to review their reasons |
| substance use                      | for reducing substance abuse                   |
|                                    | 4.2 Offer support to individuals while         |
|                                    | respecting their individual rights.            |
|                                    | 4.3 Assist individuals to review their         |
|                                    | progress in reducing substance use             |
|                                    | 4.4 Describe how to manage own feelings        |
|                                    | about the individual's progress or lack        |
|                                    | of progress to minimise the impact on          |
|                                    | the support provided                           |
|                                    | 4.5 Identify the specialist agencies and       |
|                                    | support networks involved in supporting        |
|                                    | substance users                                |
|                                    |  |
|                                    |  |

## **Evidence Requirements for this unit:**

You must provide your assessor with evidence for all the learning outcomes and assessment criteria. The evidence must be provided in the following ways taking into account any of the special considerations below.

## **Special Considerations:**

Simulation **is not permitted** for this unit.

The nature of this unit means that **the following assessment** criteria 2.2,3,4. 3.2,3,4,5,6... 4.1,2,3,5. must come from real work activities.

The evidence must reflect, at all times, the policies and procedures of the workplace, as linked to current legislation and the values and principles for good practice in the sector.

## Required sources of performance and knowledge evidence:

**Observation and/or Expert Witness Testimony** is the **required** assessment method to be used to evidence some part of this unit.



If your assessor is unable to observe you s/he will identify an expert witness in your workplace who will provide testimony of your work-based performance. Your assessor or expert witness will observe you in real work activities and this is likely to provide most of the evidence for the assessment criteria for this unit.

## Other sources of performance and knowledge evidence:

Your assessor will identify other sources of evidence to ensure that the most reliable and efficient mix of evidence gathering methods from the list below. This will ensure that all learning outcomes and assessment criteria are met and that the consistency of your performance can be established.

**Work Products:** These are non-confidential records made, or contributed to, by you e.g. promotional material relating to the effects of substance misuse and the services available in the local community.

**Confidential Records:** These may be used as evidence but must not be placed in your portfolio. They must remain in their usual location and be referred to in the assessor records in your portfolio e.g. Case records and care plans.

**Questioning:** Questions may be oral or written. In each case the question and your answer will need to be recorded e.g. outline the legislation, policies and guidelines on the use and storage of substances?

**Professional discussion:** This should be in the form of a structured review of your practice with the outcomes captured by means of audiotape or a written summary. These are particularly useful to provide evidence that you know and understand principles which support practice; policies, procedures and legislation, and that you can critically evaluate their application e.g. explain relevant policies and procedures for the support of individuals who have used substances.

**Original Certificates:** Certificates of training and records of attendance must be authentic, current and valid. Your assessor will also want to check the content of such training so that this can be matched to the standards and check that you have retained and can apply learning to practice e.g. Certificate/Progression Award in Drug and Alcohol Services.

# Case Studies, projects, assignments and candidate/reflective accounts of your work:

These methods are most appropriately used to cover any outstanding areas of your qualification.

Occasionally, because an event happens rarely or may be difficult to observe, you may be able to use a candidate/ reflective account to provide some of the evidence for this unit e.g. explain factors that influence individuals to use substances and reasons why individuals decide to reduce or cease substance use.

## Witness Testimony

Colleagues, allied professionals and individuals with whom you work may be able to provide testimony of your performance. Your assessor will help you to identify the appropriate use of witnesses.

## **Unit Guidance**

The evidence for this unit is likely to come from;



- a. The observation of the candidate working with an individual
- b. Confidential case records, and

c. The candidate's explanation of their work with this and other individuals recorded either through professional discussion or a reflective account.

| Unit aim(s)                             | This unit is for those who support individuals    |
|---|---|
|   | who are substance users by enabling them to       |
|   | adopt safe practices, providing care and          |
|   | support following an episode of substance         |
|   | use and supporting individuals' efforts to        |
|   | reduce or cease substance use. Substances         |
|   | would include alcohol, opiates,                   |
|   | hallucinogenics, amphetamines, cannabis,          |
|   | prescribed medication, solvents and other         |
|   | volatile substances; their use may be             |
|   | experimental, recreational or dependent.          |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Simulation <b>is not permitted</b> for this unit. |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | The nature of this unit means that <b>the</b>     |
| appropriate)                            | following assessment criteria 2.2, 2.3,           |
|   | 2.4, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, 3.6, 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 4.5  |
|   | must come from real work activities.              |
|   | This qualification must be assessed in            |
|   | accordance with the Assessment Principles         |
|   | developed by Skills for Care and                  |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual                  |
|   | requirements.                                     |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This unit is directly related to the Skills for   |
| and relevant national occupational      | Health/DANOS national occupational                |
| standards                               | standard:   |
|   | AB2 Support individuals who are substance         |
|   | users   |



| Title:          |   | J/650/0857 Carrying out<br>comprehensive substance misuse<br>assessment |   |
|-----------------|---|---|---|
| Level:          |   | 3   |   |
| Credit Value:   |   | 7   |   |
| Calculated GLH  | :   | 48  |   |
| Learning Outco  | omes  | Asse  | essment Criteria  |
| The learner wil | l:  | The   | learner can:  |
|                 | the legislation, policies and<br>vant to substance misuse |   | Describe the current <b>legislation</b><br>relevant to working with substance<br>misuse<br>Explain the workplace policies and<br>practices relevant to working with<br>substance misuse   |
|                 | the signs and implications of<br>iisuse related problems  | 2.3   | Describe the different substances which<br>individuals may use, how they are used<br>and their likely effects<br>Explain <b>challenges</b> often associated<br>with substance misuse<br>Explain ways of keeping up to date<br>with:<br>• knowledge about substances<br>• indications of substance misuse<br>Outline the terminology used by<br>substance misusers in the locality |
|                 | the range of substance<br>ces and treatment<br>s          | 3.2<br>3.3  | Explain treatment interventions<br>available in the locality<br>Explain the assessment services<br>available in the locality<br>Explain the eligibility criteria and<br>protocols for accessing assessment<br>services in the locality<br>Explain how to respond to individuals<br>who do not want to be referred to other<br>services  |
|                 | individual to prepare for<br>ive substance misuse         | 4.1<br>4.2  | Obtain information on individuals from<br>previous assessments carried out by<br>other services in line with protocols<br>Establish any particular needs of the<br>individual to be taken into account<br>during the assessment   |



|    |  | 4.3        | Accurately record arrangements for the assessment in line with the  |
|----|--|------------|---|
|    |  |            | organisation's procedures   |
| 5. | Assess possible risks to the individual  | 5.1        | Demonstrate how to assess the risk to<br>individuals from their substance misuse<br>and co-existent problems        |
|    |  | 5.2        |   |
|    |  |            | reviewing risk assessments  |
|    |  | 5.3        | Demonstrate that the risk assessment  |
|    |  |            | takes account of the individual's needs,  |
|    |  |            | wishes, preferences and the legal duty  |
|    |  |            | of care to the individual and others  |
| 6. | Assess individuals' substance misuse and | 6.1        | Involve the individual in the   |
|    | related problems                         |            | assessment, according to their  |
|    |  | 6.2        | capability  |
|    |  | 6.2        | Assess the nature of the individual's   |
|    |  |            | substance misuse and other related  |
|    |  | 6.2        | problems  |
|    |  | 6.3        | Assess the individual's understanding of  |
|    |  |            | services available and readiness to   |
|    |  |            | engage in a treatment programme   |
|    |  | 6.4        |   |
|    |  |            | locally agreed criteria and using   |
|    |  | с <b>г</b> | standardised documentation  |
|    |  | 6.5        | 5 5 5   |
|    |  | 6.6        | Develop a comprehensive care plan   |
|    |  | 6.7        | utilising the assessment  |
|    |  | 0.7        | Explain how to involve adults with<br>parental responsibility in the  |
|    |  |            | assessment and referral of children and young people  |
|    |  | 6.8        |   |
|    |  | 0.0        | or young person's age and maturity  |
|    |  |            | when involving them in assessment   |
| 7. | Implement the assessment process         | 7.1        | Keep records of the assessment  |
|    | r  |            | Review the assessment at appropriate intervals once the individual has  |
|    |  |            | commenced a care plan   |
|    |  | 7.3        | Provide individuals with information  |
|    |  | _          | about how:  |
|    |  |            | • to make complaints about the  |
|    |  |            | assessment process  |
|    |  |            | <ul> <li>to appeal decisions of the assessment process</li> </ul>   |
|    |  | 7.4        | •   |
|    |  |            | approach with other members of the  |
|    |  |            | substance misuse service team   |
|    |  | 7.4        | <ul> <li>to appeal decisions of the assessment<br/>process</li> <li>Explain how to ensure consistency of</li> </ul> |
|    |  |            | ••  |



## Legislation includes but is not inclusive and needs to take into account updates

The Misuse of Drugs Act 1971

The Road Traffic Act 1988

The Medicines Act 1968

The Psychoactive Substances Act 2016

## Risk factors could include:

- living independently
- boredom or lack of meaningful occupation
- desire to be socially included/loneliness
- limited social skills or low self-esteem
- lack of family contact
- impulsivity
- negative life events, for example, neglect, abuse and bereavement
- unemployment
- poverty

## Challenges could include:

- deterioration in physical and mental health
- alienation/social difficulties
- cognitive deficits
- aggression/mood changes
- verbal and physical aggression
- risk-taking behaviour including suicide
- increased epileptic seizures
- inpatient admissions
- greater risk of offending behaviour
- being vulnerable to exploitation
- financial impact, including potential loss of housing
- neglect
- abuse

## Support could include:

- mainstream addiction services
- primary care services
- community groups
- friends
- family
- other professionals

| Unit aim(s) | This unit is for those who assess the needs |
|-------------|---|
|             | of drug, alcohol or substance misusers with |
|             | complex requirements and/or those people    |



|   | who require more intensive and/or structured    |
|---|---|
|   | care programmes.                                |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Assessment criteria 4.1, 4.2, 4.3, 5.1, 5.3,    |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | 6.1, 6.2, 6.3, 6.4, 6.5, 6.6, 7.1 7.2, 7.3 must |
| appropriate)                            | be assessed in a real work environment.         |
|   | This qualification must be assessed in          |
|   | accordance with the Assessment Principles       |
|   | developed by Skills for Care and                |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual                |
|   | requirements.                                   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | This Unit is directly related to the Skills for |
| and relevant national occupational      | Health/DANOS national occupational              |
| standards                               | standard:                                       |
|   | AF3 Carry out comprehensive substance           |
|   | misuse assessment. This also appears in         |
|   | Health and Social Care Standards as HSC340.     |



| Title:   | T/616/5458 Support use of medication<br>in social care settings   |
|--|---|
| Level:   | 3   |
| Credit Value:  | 5   |
| GLH:   | 40  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand the legislative framework for the use of medication in adult care settings                                     | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain the legislation that governs the use of medication in adult care settings</li> <li>1.2 Outline the legal classification system for medication</li> <li>1.3 Explain why policies and procedures must reflect and incorporate legislative requirements</li> </ul>  |
| 2. Know about common types of medication and their use   | <ul> <li>2.1 Identify common types of medication</li> <li>2.2 Identify the conditions that common types of medications are prescribed for</li> <li>2.3 Identify the conditions for which common types of medication are prescribed</li> <li>2.4 Describe changes to an <b>individual's</b> physical or mental well-being that may indicate an adverse reaction to a medication</li> </ul> |
| 3. Understand roles and responsibilities in the use of medication in social care settings                                    | <ul> <li>3.1 Describe the roles and responsibilities of those involved in: <ul> <li>prescribing medication</li> <li>dispensing medication</li> <li>supporting use of medication</li> </ul> </li> <li>3.2 Explain roles and responsibilities relating to use of 'over the counter' remedies and supplements</li> </ul>   |
| 4. Understand techniques for administering medication  | <ul> <li>4.1 Describe the routes by which<br/>medication can be administered</li> <li>4.2 Describe different forms in which<br/>medication may be presented</li> <li>4.3 Describe materials and equipment that<br/>can assist in administering medication</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Be able to receive, store and dispose of<br/>medication supplies in line with agreed ways<br/>of working</li> </ol> | <ul><li>5.1 Receive supplies of medication</li><li>5.2 Store medication</li><li>5.3 Dispose of unused or unwanted medication</li></ul>  |



| 6. | Know how to promote the rights of the<br>individual when managing medication | 6.1 | Explain the principles of administering medication |
|----|--|-----|--|
|    |  | 6.2 |  |
|    |  |     | used to support an individual's                    |
|    |  |     | independence in managing medication                |
|    |  | 63  | Describe the ethical issues that may               |
|    |  | 0.5 | arise over the use of medication                   |
|    |  | 61  |  |
|    |  | 0.4 | Describe how ethical issues can be                 |
| _  |  |     | addressed  |
| 7. | Be able to support the use of medication                                     | 7.1 |  |
|    |  |     | medication   |
|    |  | 7.2 | Support an individual to use medication            |
|    |  |     | in ways that promote hygiene, safety,              |
|    |  |     | dignity and active participation                   |
|    |  | 7.3 | Ensure that medication is used or                  |
|    |  |     | administered correctly                             |
|    |  | 7.4 | Manage practical difficulties that                 |
|    |  |     | arise when medication is used                      |
|    |  | 7.5 | Describe how to access further                     |
|    |  |     | information and support about the use              |
|    |  |     | of medication                                      |
| 8. | Be able to record and report on use of                                       | 8.1 | Record use of medication                           |
|    | medication   | 8.2 | Record changes in an individual                    |
|    |  |     | associated with medication                         |
|    |  | 8.3 | Report issues associated with                      |
|    |  |     | medication   |
|    |  |     |  |
|    |  |     |  |

An **individual** is someone requiring care or support.

**Active participation** is a way of working that recognises an individual's right to participate in the activities and relationships of everyday life as independently as possible; the individual is regarded as an active partner in their own care or support, rather than a passive recipient.

|  | -   |
|--|---|
| Unit aim(s)                                | This unit assesses support for use of         |
|  | medication in social care settings. It covers |
|  | broad types, classifications and forms of     |
|  | medication, as well as safe handling and      |
|  | storage. It addresses practical support for   |
|  | use of medication that reflects social care   |
|  | principles and values, and includes the need  |
|  | for accurate recording and reporting.         |
| Assessment requirements specified by a     | Learning outcomes 5, 7 and 8 must be          |
| sector or regulatory body (if appropriate) | assessed in real work environments by a       |
|  | qualified occupationally competent assessor.  |
|  | Simulation is not permitted.                  |



|   | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
|---|--|
| Details of the relationship of the unit and | HSC375   |
| relevant national occupational standards    | HSC221   |
|   | HSC236   |



| Title:   | K/616/5246 Undertake agreed pressure area care   |
|--|--|
| Level:   | 2  |
| Credit Value:  | 4  |
| GLH:   | 30   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the anatomy and physiology<br/>of the skin in relation to pressure area<br/>care</li> </ol>  | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe the anatomy and physiology of the skin in relation to skin breakdown and the development of pressure sores</li> <li>1.2 Identify pressure sites of the body</li> <li>1.3 Identify factors which might put an <b>individual</b> at risk of skin breakdown and pressure sores</li> <li>1.4 Describe how incorrect handling and moving techniques can damage the skin</li> <li>1.5 Identify a range of interventions that can reduce the risk of skin breakdown and pressure sores</li> <li>1.6 Describe changes to an individual's skin condition that should be reported</li> </ul> |
| <ol> <li>Understand good practice in relation to<br/>own role when undertaking pressure<br/>area care</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Identify legislation and national guidelines affecting pressure area care</li> <li>2.2 Describe agreed ways of working relating to pressure area care</li> <li>2.3 Describe why team working is important in relation to providing pressure area care care</li> </ul>   |
| 3. Be able to follow the agreed care plan  | <ul> <li>3.1 Describe why it is important to follow the agreed care plan</li> <li>3.2 Ensure the agreed care plan has been checked prior to undertaking the pressure area care</li> </ul>  |
|  | <ul> <li>3.3 Identify any concerns with the agreed care plan prior to undertaking the pressure area care</li> <li>3.4 Describe actions to take where any concerns with the agreed care plan are noted</li> <li>3.5 Identify the pressure area risk assessment tools which are used in own work area</li> </ul>   |



|    |   | 3.6 | Explain why it is important to use risk                                     |
|----|---|-----|---|
|    |   |     | assessment tools  |
| 4. | Understand the use of materials,        | 4.1 | Identify a range of aids or equipment                                       |
|    | equipment and resources are available   |     | used to relieve pressure  |
|    | when undertaking pressure area care     | 4.2 | Describe safe use of aids and   |
|    |   |     | equipment   |
|    |   | 4.3 | Identify where up-to-date information                                       |
|    |   |     | and support can be obtained about:  |
|    |   |     | • materials   |
|    |   |     | equipment   |
|    |   |     | resources   |
| 5. | Be able to prepare to undertake         | 5.1 | Prepare equipment and environment in  |
|    | pressure area care                      |     | accordance with health and safety   |
|    |   |     | guidelines  |
|    |   | 5.2 | Obtain <b>valid consent</b> for the pressure                                |
| 6  |   |     | area care   |
| 6. | Be able to undertake pressure area care | 6.1 | Carry out pressure area care procedure                                      |
|    |   |     | in a way that:  |
|    |   |     | <ul> <li>respects the individual's dignity and</li> </ul>                   |
|    |   |     | privacy   |
|    |   |     | <ul><li>maintains safety</li><li>ensures the individual's comfort</li></ul> |
|    |   |     | <ul> <li>promotes active participation</li> </ul>                           |
|    |   |     | <ul> <li>promotes partnership working</li> </ul>                            |
|    |   | 6.2 | Apply standard precautions for  |
|    |   | 0.2 | infection prevention and control  |
|    |   | 6.3 | Carry out the pressure area care  |
|    |   | 0.5 | procedure without obstruction from  |
|    |   |     | bedding and clothing  |
|    |   | 6.4 | Move an individual using approved   |
|    |   |     | techniques and in accordance with the                                       |
|    |   |     | agreed care plan  |
|    |   | 6.5 | Use pressure relieving aids in  |
|    |   | _   | accordance with the care plan and any                                       |
|    |   |     | safety instructions   |
|    |   | 6.6 | Communicate effectively with the  |
|    |   |     | individual throughout the intervention                                      |
|    |   | 6.7 | Complete all records and documentation                                      |
|    |   |     | accurately and legibly  |
|    |   |     | -   |
|    |   |     |   |

**Individual** refers to someone requiring care or support; it will usually mean the person or people supported by the learner

Valid consent must be in line with agreed UK country definition



**Active participation** is a way of working that recognises an individual's right to participate in the activities and relationships of everyday life as independently as possible; the individual is regarded as an active partner in their own care or support, rather than a passive recipient.

| Unit aim(s)                             | This unit covers providing care to maintain    |
|---|--|
|   | healthy skin and prevent skin breakdown, by    |
|   | undertaking pressure area care in              |
|   | accordance with an individual's care plan and  |
|   | risk assessment.                               |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Learning outcomes 3, 5 and 6 must be           |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | assessed in a real work environment.           |
| appropriate)                            | This unit must be assessed in line with Skills |
|   | for Health Assessment Principles.              |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | CHS5   |
| and relevant national occupational      |  |
| standards                               |  |



| Title:   | Y/616/5288 Undertake physiological<br>measurements   |
|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |
| Credit Value:  | 3  |
| GLH:   | 23   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Understand relevant legislation, policy<br/>and good practice for undertaking<br/>physiological measurements</li> <li>Understand the physiological states that<br/>can be measured</li> </ol> | <ol> <li>Describe current legislation, national guidelines, organisational policies and protocols affecting work practice</li> <li>Explain the principles of blood pressure to include:         <ul> <li>blood pressure maintenance</li> <li>differentiation between systolic and diastolic blood pressure</li> <li>normal limits of blood pressure</li> <li>conditions of high or low blood pressure</li> <li>conditions of high or low blood pressure</li> </ul> </li> <li>Explain the principles of body temperature to include:         <ul> <li>body temperature maintenance</li> <li>normal body temperature</li> <li>pyrexia, hyper-pyrexia and hypothermia</li> </ul> </li> <li>Explain the principles of respiratory rates to include:         <ul> <li>normal respiratory rates</li> <li>factors affecting respiratory rates in ill and well individuals</li> </ul> </li> <li>Explain the principles of pulse rates to include:         <ul> <li>normal pulse rates limits</li> <li>factors affecting pulse rates - raising or lowering</li> <li>pulse sites on the body</li> <li>the requirement for pulse oximetry measurements</li> <li>analysis and implication of pulse oximetry findings</li> </ul> </li> <li>Explain the principles of Body Mass Index (BMI) in relation to weight/dietary control</li> </ol> |



|    |  | 2.0      | E data da susta fonda a da tafla sus                           |
|----|--|----------|--|
|    |  | 2.6      | Explain the major factors that influence                       |
|    |  | ~ 7      | changes in physiological measurements                          |
|    |  | 2.7      | Explain the importance of undertaking                          |
|    |  |          | physiological measurements                                     |
|    |  | 2.8      | Explain how <b>physiological</b>                               |
|    |  |          | measurements may need to be                                    |
|    |  |          | adapted for the individual                                     |
| 3. | Be able to prepare to take physiological                           | 3.1      | Explain to the <b>individual</b> what                          |
|    | measurements   |          | measurements will be undertaken and                            |
|    |  |          | why these are done   |
|    |  | 3.2      | Reassure the individual during                                 |
|    |  |          | physiological measurements process                             |
|    |  | 3.3      | Answer questions and deal with                                 |
|    |  |          | concerns during physiological                                  |
|    |  |          | measurements process   |
|    |  | 3.4      | Explain the help individuals may need                          |
|    |  |          | before taking their physiological                              |
|    |  |          | measurements   |
|    |  | 3.5      | Explain why it may be necessary to                             |
|    |  |          | adjust an individual's clothing before                         |
|    |  |          | undertaking physiological                                      |
|    |  |          | measurements   |
|    |  | 3.6      | Ensure all materials and equipment to                          |
|    |  |          | be used are appropriately prepared                             |
|    |  | 3.7      |  |
|    |  |          | obtain valid consent   |
| 4. | Be able to undertake physiological                                 | 4.1      | Apply standard precautions for infection                       |
|    | measurements   |          | prevention and control   |
|    |  | 4.2      | Apply health and safety measures                               |
|    |  |          | relevant to the procedure and                                  |
|    |  |          | environment  |
|    |  | 4.3      |  |
|    |  |          | at the prescribed time and in the                              |
|    |  |          | prescribed sequence to obtain an                               |
|    |  |          | accurate measurement   |
|    |  | 4.4      | Monitor the condition of the individual                        |
|    |  |          | throughout the measurement                                     |
|    |  | 4.5      | Respond to any significant changes in                          |
|    |  |          | the individual's condition                                     |
|    |  | 4.6      | Follow the agreed process when unable                          |
|    |  |          | to obtain or read a physiological                              |
|    |  |          | measurement  |
|    |  | 4.7      |  |
|    |  |          | responsibility and refer these to other                        |
|    |  |          | colleagues   |
|    |  | <u> </u> | -  |
| 5  | Be able to record and report results of                            | 51       | Explain the necessity for recording                            |
| 5. | Be able to record and report results of physiological measurements | 5.1      | Explain the necessity for recording physiological measurements |



| <ul> <li>5.2 Explain a few common conditions which require recording of physiological measurements</li> <li>5.3 Demonstrate the correct process for reporting measurements that fall outside the normal levels</li> <li>5.4 Record physiological measurements taken accurately using the correct documentation</li> </ul> |
|---|
|   |

**Physiological measurements may need to be adapted for the individual** depending on their:

- size
- age
- stage of development

**Individual** refers to someone requiring care or support; it will usually mean the person or people supported by the learner

Valid consent must be in line with agreed UK country definition

| Unit aim(s)  | This unit is aimed at health and social care<br>staff involved in the taking and recording of<br>physiological measurements as part of the<br>individual's care plan. |
|--|---|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | Learning outcomes 3, 4 and 5 must be<br>assessed in a real work environment.<br>This unit must be assessed in line with Skills<br>for Health Assessment Principles.   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | CHS19.2012  |



| Title:  | J/618/5066 Supporting infection prevention and control in social care   |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 3   |
| Credit Value:   | 3   |
| GLH:  | 20  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand infection prevention and<br/>control policies and guidelines</li> </ol>               | <ul> <li>1.1 Explain how infection prevention<br/>policies and guidelines can be applied in<br/>own <b>work setting</b></li> <li>1.2 Identify differences in the ways in which<br/>infection prevention and control policies<br/>and guidance are implemented in a<br/>work setting</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Be able to support infection prevention<br/>and control practices in the work setting</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Minimise risk of infection to self and others in the work setting</li> <li>2.2 Support individuals to take steps to minimise spread of infection</li> <li>2.3 Carry out hand hygiene following work setting policies and guidelines</li> <li>2.4 Support others to understand their responsibilities for infection prevention and control in the work setting</li> <li>2.5 Provide guidance to others about infection prevention and control practices in work setting</li> <li>2.6 Explain the functions of external bodies in supporting infection prevention and control in the work setting</li> <li>2.7 Maintain own understanding of information to support effective infection prevention and control practice</li> </ul> |
| 3. Be able to minimise the risk and spread of infection when using equipment                              | <ul> <li>3.1 Ensure equipment is stored and maintained in ways that minimise the spread of infection</li> <li>3.2 Use agreed cleaning schedules for equipment in own work setting</li> <li>3.3 Explain why particular <b>devices</b> need special handling to minimise the spread of infection</li> </ul>   |



| 1   |  |     |  |
|---|--|-----|--|
| 4.  | Understand how to respond to<br>outbreaks of infection in the work<br>setting  | 4.1 | Explain how to work with others to<br>identity infection outbreaks in own work<br>setting                  |
|   |  | 4.2 | Explain how to work with others to<br>implement policies and procedures<br>following an infection outbreak |
|   |  | 4.3 | -  |
|   |  | 4.4 | Describe ways to ensure that care for<br>the individual is provided in the most                            |
|   |  | 4.5 | appropriate place<br>Describe situations where additional  |
|   |  |     | guidance may need to be accessed to  |
|   |  |     | manage infection prevention and<br>control incidents   |
| 5.  | Be able to follow correct recording and  | 5.1 | Describe the process for sharing   |
|   | reporting procedures regarding infection   |     | information about infections and   |
|   | prevention and control   |     | suspected infections within own work   |
|   |  | 5.2 | setting<br>Describe processes for reporting  |
|   |  | 0.2 | accidents and incidents relating to  |
|   |  |     | infection prevention and control within  |
|   |  |     | own work setting   |
|   |  | 5 2 | Complete records for infection   |
|   |  | 5.5 | •  |
|   |  | 5.5 | prevention and control in line with  |
|   |  | 5.5 | •  |
| Ade   | ditional information about this unit (a  |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
|   | -  |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
| Rar   | <b>ditional information about this unit (a</b> n<br>nge of <b>work settings</b> may include:<br>Individuals own home   |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
| Rar<br>•  | nge of <b>work settings</b> may include:<br>Individuals own home<br>Community environments   |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
| Rar<br>•<br>•   | nge of <b>work settings</b> may include:<br>Individuals own home<br>Community environments<br>Hospitals  |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
| Rar<br>•<br>•   | nge of <b>work settings</b> may include:<br>Individuals own home<br>Community environments<br>Hospitals<br>Residential care homes  |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
| Rar<br>•<br>•   | nge of <b>work settings</b> may include:<br>Individuals own home<br>Community environments<br>Hospitals  |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
| Rar<br>•<br>•   | nge of <b>work settings</b> may include:<br>Individuals own home<br>Community environments<br>Hospitals<br>Residential care homes  |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
| Rar<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>Otl                        | nge of <b>work settings</b> may include:<br>Individuals own home<br>Community environments<br>Hospitals<br>Residential care homes<br>Nursing homes<br><b>hers</b> may include:<br>People who use services  |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
| Rar<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>Otl                        | age of <b>work settings</b> may include:<br>Individuals own home<br>Community environments<br>Hospitals<br>Residential care homes<br>Nursing homes<br><b>hers</b> may include:<br>People who use services<br>Care or support staff   |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
| Rar<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•                          | age of <b>work settings</b> may include:<br>Individuals own home<br>Community environments<br>Hospitals<br>Residential care homes<br>Nursing homes<br><b>hers</b> may include:<br>People who use services<br>Care or support staff<br>Colleague  |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
| Rar<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•                          | nge of <b>work settings</b> may include:<br>Individuals own home<br>Community environments<br>Hospitals<br>Residential care homes<br>Nursing homes<br><b>hers</b> may include:<br>People who use services<br>Care or support staff<br>Colleague<br>Manager                                     |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
| Rar<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•           | age of <b>work settings</b> may include:<br>Individuals own home<br>Community environments<br>Hospitals<br>Residential care homes<br>Nursing homes<br><b>hers</b> may include:<br>People who use services<br>Care or support staff<br>Colleague  |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |
| Rar<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>•<br>• | age of <b>work settings</b> may include:<br>Individuals own home<br>Community environments<br>Hospitals<br>Residential care homes<br>Nursing homes<br><b>hers</b> may include:<br>People who use services<br>Care or support staff<br>Colleague<br>Manager<br>Non direct care or support staff |     | prevention and control in line with policies and guidelines  |



- Contractors
- Volunteers
- Other professionals

### External bodies may include:

- Health Protection Units
- Health Protection Agency
- GPs
- Local authorities
- Regulators for example CQC
- Primary Care Trusts
- Hospitals
- Other healthcare providers- CCG

**Devices** may include:

- Urinary catheters
- Intravenous lines
- PEG feeding tubes
- Glucose monitoring devices
- Stoma bags
- Colostomy bags

**Appropriate place** must be the right place for the individual and the others around them. The best place is not always a hospital environment and the decision must be made by a multidisciplinary team. A place of isolation could be in hospital but it could also be an individual's own home or room within a residential environment.

| Unit aim(s)                             | The purpose if this unit is to develop the    |
|---|---|
|   | learner's understanding, knowledge and skills |
|   | when supporting infection prevention and      |
|   | control in social care.                       |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in        |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | accordance with the Assessment Principles     |
| appropriate)                            | developed by Skills for Care and              |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual              |
|   | requirements.                                 |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | N/A   |
| and relevant national occupational      |   |
| standards                               |   |



|   | F/618/5132 Provide support for therapy sessions   |  |
|---|---|--|
| Level:  | 2   |  |
| Credit Value:                                   | 3   |  |
| GLH:  | 16  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:          | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| 1. Understand the benefits of therapy sessions  | <ul> <li>1.1 Identify therapy sessions in which an individual may participate</li> <li>1.2 Describe how therapy sessions can benefit an individual</li> </ul>   |  |
| 2. Provide support in therapy sessions          | <ul> <li>2.1 Identify with the individual their preferences and requirements for the therapy session</li> <li>2.2 Provide support during a therapy session that takes account of: <ul> <li>the therapist's directions</li> <li>the individual's preferences, needs and requirements</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.3 Promote active participation during the session</li> <li>2.4 Describe ways to overcome fears or concerns an individual may have about a therapy session</li> </ul> |  |
| 3. Contribute to the review of therapy sessions | <ul> <li>3.1 Contribute to a review of therapy sessions to identify issues and progress</li> <li>3.2 Contribute to agreeing changes to therapy sessions with the individual and <b>others</b></li> </ul>  |  |

# Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)

Therapy sessions may include:

- occupational therapy
- physiotherapy
- hydrotherapy
- aromatherapy
- reflexology
- massage
- acupuncture
- nutritional therapy
- Bowen technique



An individual is someone requiring care or support

**Others** may include:

- Therapist
- line manager
- family
- friends
- advocates
- others who are important to the individual's well-being

**Active participation** is a way of working that recognises an individual's right to participate in the activities and relationships of everyday life as independently as possible; the individual is regarded as an active partner in their own care or support, rather than a passive recipient.

|   | -  |
|---|--|
| Unit aim(s)                             | The unit provides the learner with the         |
|   | knowledge and skills needed to support         |
|   | individuals participating in therapy sessions. |
|   | It covers preparation, support, and the        |
|   | review of therapy sessions.                    |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | Learning outcomes 2, 3, 4 and 5 must be        |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | assessed in a real work situation.             |
| appropriate)                            | This qualification must be assessed in         |
|   | accordance with the Assessment Principles      |
|   | developed by Skills for Care and               |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual               |
|   | requirements.                                  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | HSC212   |
| and relevant national occupational      |  |
| standards                               |  |



| Title:  | Y/618/5265 Prepare environments and resources for use during healthcare activities   |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 2  |
| Credit Value:   | 3  |
| GLH:  | 17   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Understand how to manage<br/>environments for use during healthcare<br/>activities</li> </ol>                          | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe how the environment is prepared, maintained and sanitised to ensure it is ready for the healthcare activity</li> <li>1.2 Describe the roles and responsibilities of team members in the management of the environment and resources</li> <li>1.3 Explain how to report problems with the environment and who to report problems to</li> <li>1.4 Explain the impact of environmental changes on resources including their storage and use</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Prepare environments, medical<br/>equipment, devices and resources for<br/>use during healthcare activities</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Apply the relevant health and safety measures to the healthcare activity and environment</li> <li>2.2 Apply standard precautions for infection prevention and control</li> <li>2.3 Ensure conditions within the immediate environment are set at levels which maintain individual comfort</li> <li>2.4 Ensure all essential resources are available in advance of planned healthcare activities</li> <li>2.5 Ensure all medical equipment, devices and resources are in a suitable, safe condition for the activity to be carried out</li> <li>2.6 Report any problems with medical equipment, devices as required</li> <li>2.7 Ensure the relevant equipment and medical devices are selected, prepared</li> </ul> |



|   | and functioning within the several  |
|---|---|
|   | and functioning within the agreed<br>parameters prior to use                        |
|   | 2.8 Prepare resources for the activity in line                                      |
|   | with clinical governance  |
| 3. Ensure that environments and resources | 3.1 Describe the importance of ensuring   |
| are ready for their next intended use     | that environments are ready for their   |
|   | next use  |
|   | 3.2 Outline the factors that influence the  |
|   | readiness of environments for use in  |
|   | health care activities  |
|   | 3.3 Demonstrate how to make safe and  |
|   | clean re-useable items prior to storage<br>in accordance with agreed policies       |
|   | 3.4 Dispose of used, damaged or out of  |
|   | date items safely   |
|   | 3.5 Return un-opened, unused and surplus  |
|   | resources to the correct location for   |
|   | storage   |
|   | 3.6 Monitor the available levels of   |
|   | consumable materials used in  |
|   | healthcare activities   |
|   | 3.7 Replenish consumable materials used in healthcare activities in accordance with |
|   | protocols   |
|   | 3.8 Demonstrate that all information is   |
|   | accurately recorded as specified in local   |
|   | policies  |
| Additional information about this unit (a | mplification for assessment criteria)   |
|   |   |
| N/A                                       |   |
| Unit aim(s)                               | This unit is aimed at health and social care  |
|   | staff who prepare for individual's health care                                      |
|   | intervention, treatment or therapy and  |
|   | ensure that the environment is cleaned,   |
|   | cleared and left ready for the next intended  |
|   | use.  |
| Assessment requirements specified by      | Learning outcomes 2 and 3 must be   |
| a sector or regulatory body (if           | assessed in a real work environment.  |
| appropriate)                              | This qualification must be assessed in  |
|   | accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and       |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual  |
|   | requirements.   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit   | N/A   |
| and relevant national occupational        |   |
| standards                                 |   |
|   | 1   |



| Titl | e:  | H/650/0874 Contribute to raising awareness of health issues  |  |
|------|---|--|--|
| Lev  | el:   | 4  |  |
| Cre  | dit Value:  | 5  |  |
| Cal  | culated GLH:  | 36   |  |
| Lea  | rning Outcomes  | Assessment Criteria  |  |
| The  | e learner will:   | The learner can:   |  |
| 1.   | Understand factors affecting awareness-<br>raising activities about health issues | <ul> <li>1.1 Analyse reasons why it may be necessary to raise awareness of health issues</li> <li>1.2 Compare the roles of agencies and others who may be involved in raising awareness of health issues</li> </ul>                      |  |
|      |   | 1.3 Describe factors to consider when planning awareness-raising activities  |  |
| 2.   | Recognise the need for raising<br>awareness of health issues                      | <ul> <li>2.1 Access information and support about health issues and approaches to raising awareness</li> <li>2.2 Identify with others any health issues affecting <b>individuals</b> about which awareness needs to be raised</li> </ul> |  |
|      |   | 2.3 Review with <b>others</b> the demand for<br>and interest in raising awareness of a<br>particular health issue  |  |
| 3.   | Assist in planning activities to raise<br>awareness of health issues              | 3.1 Contribute to agreeing roles and responsibilities within a team planning awareness-raising activities  |  |
|      |   | 3.2 Work with the team to plan a set of activities to raise awareness about a health issue   |  |
| 4.   | Contribute to implementing activities for raising awareness of health issues      | 4.1 Carry out agreed role to implement activities  |  |
|      |   | <ul><li>4.2 Promote effective team work whilst the agreed plan is implemented</li><li>4.3 Encourage individuals and others to give feedback about awareness-raising activities</li></ul>   |  |
| 5.   | Review the effectiveness of activities to raise awareness of health issues        | <ul> <li>5.1 Work with others to agree processes<br/>and criteria for reviewing the<br/>programme of activities.</li> <li>5.2 Collate and present information about<br/>the activities.</li> </ul>                                       |  |



|   | <ul><li>5.3 Work with others to review the effectiveness of the programme.</li><li>5.4 Make recommendations for changes to awareness-raising activities</li></ul>   |  |
|---|---|--|
| Additional information about this unit (a   | mplification for assessment criteria)   |  |
| <ul> <li>Health issues may include:</li> <li>Specific health needs</li> <li>Actions or behaviours that may put health or development at risk</li> </ul>   |   |  |
| <ul> <li>Others may include:</li> <li>Co-workers, line manager and other professionals</li> <li>Carers, friends and relatives of individuals</li> <li>Others who are important to the well-being of individuals</li> </ul>  |   |  |
| An individual is someone requiring care or su   | Jpport  |  |
| <ul> <li>The plan may include:</li> <li>aims, objectives, outcomes and target audience</li> <li>media and communication formats</li> <li>best options to meet aims</li> <li>how to implement activities</li> <li>how to monitor activities</li> <li>roles and responsibilities</li> </ul> |   |  |
| Activities may include:<br>• Consultations<br>• Interviews<br>• Questionnaires<br>• Presentations<br>• Displays/posters<br>• Discussion groups<br>• Self-analysis checklists  |   |  |
| <ul> <li>Information may include information about:</li> <li>Processes</li> <li>Outcomes</li> <li>Impact on target audience</li> <li>Cost effectiveness</li> </ul>  |   |  |
| Unit aim(s)   | This unit is aimed at those working in a wide<br>range of settings. It provides the learner with<br>the knowledge and skills required to work as<br>part of a team to raise awareness of health<br>issues |  |

issues.



| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | Learning outcomes 2, 3, 4 and 5 must be<br>assessed in a real work environment.<br>This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
|--|---|
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | N/A   |



| Title:   | T/616/5413 Support individuals to stay safe from harm or abuse  |  |
|--|---|--|
| Level:   | 3   |  |
| Credit Value:  | 4   |  |
| GLH:   | 27  |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand how legislative<br/>frameworks support<br/>the safeguarding of individuals</li> <li>Support individuals to gain<br/>understanding of behaviours and<br/>situations that may make them<br/>vulnerable to harm or abuse</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe legislation and national policies that relate to the safeguarding of individuals</li> <li>1.2 Explain the relationship between local procedures and guidelines for safeguarding and legislative frameworks</li> <li>2.1 Identify the <b>factors</b> that make an individual vulnerable to harm or abuse.</li> <li>2.2 Work with an individual and <b>key people</b> to identify actions, behaviours and situations that may lead to harm or abuse to the individual</li> <li>2.3 Describe the common features of perpetrator behaviour</li> <li>2.4 Support an individual to gain understanding of when the behaviour of others may be unacceptable</li> <li>2.5 Support an individual to gain understanding of the risks associated with the use of <b>electronic</b></li> </ul> |  |
| 3. Support individuals to gain   | communications 3.1 Support an individual to gain  |  |
| understanding about how to stay safe   | <ul> <li>understanding about their right to stay safe</li> <li>3.2 Support an individual to gain understanding about their responsibility to contribute to keeping themselves safe</li> <li>3.3 Work with an individual and balance their rights, responsibilities and risks.</li> <li>3.4 Explain how to challenge behaviours or actions that may lead to harm or abuse</li> </ul>   |  |
| 4. Work in ways that support individuals to stay safe  | 4.1 Engage with an individual in a way that supports trust and rapport  |  |



|     | Support an individual to express their<br>fears, anxieties or concerns that they<br>may have about their own safety                      |
|-----|--|
| 4.3 | Explain what actions to take where<br>there are concerns that an individual<br>might have been harmed or abused                          |
| 4.4 | Take action to deal with risks that may lead to harm or abuse  |
|     | Support an individual to understand the<br>workers' responsibility to<br>share information about potential or<br>actual harm or abuse    |
|     | Explain how to avoid actions or<br>statements that could adversely affect<br>the use of evidence in future<br>investigations or in court |
| 4.7 | Keep records about any changes,<br>events or occurrences that cause<br>concern that are detailed, accurate,<br>timed, dated and signed   |
| 4.8 | Explain the actions that should be taken if reported concerns are not acted upon   |
|     | Access support in situations that are<br>outside your expertise, experience, role<br>and responsibility                                  |
|     | Use supervision and support to<br>consider the impact on self and others<br>of suspected or disclosed harm or<br>abuse                   |
|     |  |

### Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)

**Safeguarding** is working with individuals and their families to take all reasonable measures to ensure that the risks of harm are minimised, and where there are concerns about the welfare of individuals, appropriate action is taken to address those concerns, working to national policies and guidance and to agreed local policies and procedures in full partnership with local agencies

Individuals refers to an adult, child or young person who is accessing a social care service

**Key people** are those who are important to an individual and who can make a difference to his or her well-being. Key people include family, friends, carers and others with whom the individual has an important relationship

**Harm or abuse** may include Cyber Bullying; neglect; physical; emotional; sexual; financial abuse; bullying; self-harm and discrimination



**Factors** would include factors that make someone more vulnerable, these may relate to the individual, to their personal circumstances, to the work setting or to their environment

**Electronic communications** may include the use of Smart phones, tablets, laptops that can access the internet, including social networking sites

| Unit aim(s)                             | The purpose of this unit is to develop the  |  |
|---|---|--|
|   | knowledge, understanding and skills of the  |  |
|   | learner to support individuals to stay safe |  |
|   | from harm or abuse.                         |  |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in      |  |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | accordance with the Assessment Principles   |  |
| appropriate)                            | developed by Skills for Care and            |  |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual            |  |
|   | requirements.                               |  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | SCDHSC0024 – Support the safeguarding of    |  |
| and relevant national occupational      | individuals.                                |  |
| standards                               | SCDHSC0034 – Promote the safeguarding of    |  |
|   | children and young people.                  |  |
|   | SCDHSC0035 – Promote the safeguarding of    |  |
|   | individuals.                                |  |
|   | SCDHSC00325 – Contribute to the support of  |  |
|   | children and young people who have          |  |
|   | experienced harm or abuse.                  |  |
|   | SCDHSC0335 – Contribute to the support of   |  |
|   | individuals who have experienced harm or    |  |
|   | abuse.                                      |  |
|   | SCDHSC0044 – Lead practice that promotes    |  |
|   | the safeguarding of children and young      |  |
|   | people.                                     |  |
|   | SCDHSC0045 – Lead practice that promotes    |  |
|   | the safeguarding of individuals.            |  |



| Title:  | J/618/5052 Assess the needs of carers and families   |  |
|---|--|--|
| Level:  | 3  |  |
| Credit Value:   | 4  |  |
| GLH:  | 28   |  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |  |
| <ol> <li>Understand the contribution that<br/>families and carers make in providing<br/>care for individuals</li> <li>Engage with families and carers who are<br/>providing care for individuals</li> </ol> | <ol> <li>Analyse the role of families and unpaid<br/>carers in social care to include the<br/>appropriate demographic information</li> <li>Explain the rights of families and carers<br/>when providing care to individuals</li> <li>Describe the benefits to <b>society</b> of<br/>family and unpaid carers providing care<br/>for individuals</li> <li>Describe the benefits and challenges<br/>faced by family and unpaid carers in<br/>providing care</li> <li>Support families and carers to speak<br/>about their feelings and experiences of<br/>providing care to individuals</li> <li>Use <b>active listening</b> skills to identify<br/>unspoken feelings and emotions of<br/>families and carers</li> <li>Support families and carers to<br/>understand their rights and<br/>responsibilities</li> <li>Support families and carers to carry out<br/>their caring role</li> <li>Explain to families and carers the<br/>additional support that is available to<br/>them</li> <li>Gain consent from families and carers to</li> </ol> |  |
|   | speak with other organisations and<br>professionals about their circumstances  |  |
| 3. Assess the needs of families and carers  | <ul> <li>3.1 Support families and carers to identify and access the support they need to meet the needs of an individual</li> <li>3.2 Identify with families and carers the areas of care which they want to retain and those areas they do not</li> </ul>   |  |



|   | <ul> <li>3.3 Support families and carers to identify their wishes and needs for their own well-being</li> <li>3.4 Gather additional information from agreed others</li> <li>3.5 Share the record of assessment with families and carers</li> </ul>  |  |
|---|---|--|
| <ol> <li>Be able to identify a plan to support<br/>families and carers</li> </ol>   | <ul> <li>4.1 Support families, carers and others to identify resources to address their <b>needs and wishes</b></li> <li>4.2 Support families, carers and others to develop a <b>plan of action</b> to access the appropriate resources</li> <li>4.3 Support families, carers and others to implement the plan of action</li> </ul> |  |
| Additional information about this unit (a   | mplification for assessment criteria)   |  |
| The <b>individual</b> is the person requiring care or   | support   |  |
| <ul> <li>Society may include:</li> <li>Local Authority provision</li> <li>NHS</li> <li>Individuals and others</li> <li>Communities</li> </ul> Active listening may include: <ul> <li>Observation</li> <li>Clarification</li> <li>Questioning techniques</li> <li>Non verbal messages</li> </ul> Others may include: <ul> <li>Other professionals</li> <li>Agencies</li> </ul> |   |  |
| Line manager  |   |  |
| <ul><li>Agreed:</li><li>Others whom the family and carers have agreed can be consulted to either obtain or share information</li></ul>  |   |  |
| <ul> <li>Resources may include:</li> <li>Family or neighbours</li> <li>Community resources</li> <li>Voluntary organisations</li> <li>Statutory support in terms of additional domiciliary care</li> <li>Respite for carers to have time for themselves</li> </ul>   |   |  |



#### **Needs and wishes** may include:

- Additional support to alleviate the physical input by the carer
- Time to have a holiday
- Go to the hairdressers
- Time with their peers to do fun things.

### Plan of action may include:

- Plans of Care
- Person centred plans.

It may not require formal statutory responses, but may be a plan whereby a carer decides to designate time for themselves and may identify a recreational activity

| Unit aim(s)  | The purpose of this unit is to develop the<br>learner's understanding, knowledge and skills<br>when assessing the needs of families and<br>carers.                           |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by<br>a sector or regulatory body (if<br>appropriate)    | This qualification must be assessed in<br>accordance with the Assessment Principles<br>developed by Skills for Care and<br>Development to complement Ofqual<br>requirements. |
| Details of the relationship of the unit<br>and relevant national occupational<br>standards | N/A  |



| Title:   | T/618/5144 Contribute to effective team working in adult care settings   |
|--|--|
| Level:   | 3  |
| Credit Value:  | 4  |
| GLH:   | 25   |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:                             | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1. Understand theories of <b>teams</b> and team working            | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe models of team working</li> <li>1.2 Explain the process of team<br/>development</li> <li>1.3 Explain how shared goals can lead to<br/>team cohesion</li> </ul>   |
| 2. Understand the principles that underpin effective teamwork      | <ul> <li>2.1 Explain why teams need: <ul> <li>clear objectives</li> <li>clearly defined roles and responsibilities</li> <li>trust and accountability</li> <li>confidentiality</li> <li>effective communication</li> <li>conflict resolution</li> </ul> </li> <li>2.2 Explain why mutual respect and support promotes effective teamwork</li> </ul>   |
| 3. Be able to work as part of a team                               | <ul> <li>3.1 Identify own role and responsibility in the team</li> <li>3.2 Communicate effectively with team members</li> <li>3.3 Involve other team members in decision making</li> <li>3.4 Seek support and advice from <b>others</b></li> <li>3.5 Offer support to other team members</li> <li>3.6 Explain lines of reporting and responsibility in the team</li> <li>3.7 Describe the strengths and contributions of other team members to the work of the team</li> </ul> |
| <ol> <li>Be able to support individual team<br/>members</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>4.1 Provide encouragement and support to individual team members within their roles</li> <li>4.2 Provide constructive feedback on performance to individual team members</li> </ul>   |



| 5. | Be able to contribute to the review of the work of the team | 5.1   | Reflect on own performance in working as part of a team                                   |
|----|---|-------|---|
|    |   | 5.2   | Contribute to a review of team<br>performance in achieving or working<br>towards goals    |
|    |   | 5.3   | Contribute to the development of<br>continuous improvement within the<br>work of the team |
| Ad | ditional information about this unit (a                     | mplif | ication for assessment criteria)  |

Teams could include:

- Within the organisation / service
- Multi-disciplinary
- Multi-agency

# Others could include:

- Team members and colleagues
- Other professionals
- Line manager

| Unit aim(s)                             | The purpose of this unit is to develop the |
|---|--|
|   | knowledge, understanding and skills of     |
|   | learners to enable them to contribute to   |
|   | effective team work in social care.        |
| Assessment requirements specified by    | This qualification must be assessed in     |
| a sector or regulatory body (if         | accordance with the Assessment Principles  |
| appropriate)                            | developed by Skills for Care and           |
|   | Development to complement Ofqual           |
|   | requirements.                              |
| Details of the relationship of the unit | SCD CCLD 0338 Develop productive working   |
| and relevant national occupational      | relationships with other                   |
| standards                               |  |
|   | SCD HSC 3121 Promote the effectiveness of  |
|   | teams                                      |



| Title:  | R/616/7914 Anatomy, physiology,   |
|---|---|
|   | health and wellbeing  |
| Level:  | 5   |
| Credit Value:   | 5   |
| GLH:  | 23  |
| Learning Outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment Criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Understand the basic make-up of the<br/>human body</li> <li>Understand the structure and function of<br/>body systems</li> <li>Understand the links between the human<br/>body and health and wellbeing</li> <li>Additional information about this unit<br/>N/A</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe the structure and function of a single human cell</li> <li>1.2 Explain how cells make up systems in the human body</li> <li>1.3 Evaluate the function of DNA and its effect on the human body</li> <li>2.1 Explain the different systems of the human anatomy</li> <li>2.2 Explain the main functions of each of the body systems</li> <li>2.3 Analyse the relationships between the different body systems</li> <li>2.4 Explain the concept of homeostasis and its links with the body systems</li> <li>3.1 Analyse positive and negative factors which affect each of the body systems</li> <li>3.2 Explain what is meant by a 'healthy lifestyle'</li> </ul> |
| Unit aim (s)<br>Assessment requirements specified by a  | The aim of this unit is to enable learners to<br>understand the structure and functions of<br>the human biology. Each of the human body<br>systems are explored and the relationships<br>between them. Learners will also explore the<br>links between the human body and health<br>and wellbeing.  |
| sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)<br>Details of the relationship of the unit and<br>relevant National Occupational Standards   | N/A   |



| Title:  | J/502/4156 Improving Productivity<br>Using IT   |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 2   |
| Credit value:   | 4   |
| GLH:  | 30  |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Plan, select and use appropriate IT<br/>systems and software for different<br/>purposes</li> </ol>                       | <ol> <li>1.1 Describe the purpose for using IT</li> <li>1.2 Describe the methods, skills and resources required to complete the task successfully</li> <li>1.3 Plan how to carry out tasks using IT to achieve the required purpose and outcome</li> <li>1.4 Describe any factors that may affect the task</li> <li>1.5 Select and use IT systems and software applications to complete planned tasks and produce effective outcomes</li> <li>1.6 Describe how the purpose and outcomes have been met by the chosen IT systems and software applications</li> <li>1.7 Describe any legal or local guidelines or constraints that may apply to the task or activity</li> </ol> |
| <ol> <li>Review and adapt the on-going use of IT<br/>tools and systems to make sure that<br/>activities are successful</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Review on-going use of IT tools and techniques and change the approach as needed</li> <li>2.2 Describe whether the IT tools selected were appropriate for the task and purpose</li> <li>2.3 Assess strengths and weaknesses of final work</li> <li>2.4 Describe ways to make further improvements to work</li> <li>2.5 Review outcomes to make sure they match requirements and are fit for purpose</li> </ul>   |
| 3. Develop and test solutions to improve the on-going use of IT tools and systems   | <ul> <li>3.1 Review the benefits and drawbacks of IT tools and systems used, in terms of productivity and efficiency</li> <li>3.2 Describe ways to improve productivity and efficiency</li> </ul>   |



| 3.3 Develop solutions to improve own           |
|--|
| productivity in using IT                       |
| 3.4 Test solutions to ensure that they work as |

intended

# Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)

# Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding and use of IT systems and software for different uses. This could include the recording and updating of care plans, researching medication new to an individual, or the support required for a specific need.

# Learning Outcome 2

This could continue on from the task for Learning Outcome 1, requiring the learner to review their progress and make the necessary changes to ensure the task completed is fit for purpose. This could include amending a care plan or review form or app so it meets the needs of the setting, or identifying a more efficient and effective programme or app to be used to record notes and share information.

# **Learning Outcome 3**

This could continue on from the task for Learning Outcomes 1 and 2, where any suggested changes, for example programmes or apps, are used in the setting and tested to ensure they are compliant and efficient.

| Unit aim(s) | The use of IT tools and systems can improve<br>the productivity and efficiency of work<br>activities in a variety of contexts.  |
|-------------|---|
|             | This unit is about the skills and knowledge<br>needed by the IT User to plan and review their<br>use of predefined or commonly used IT tools<br>for activities that are at times non-routine or<br>unfamiliar. As a result of reviewing their work,<br>they will be able to identify and use automated<br>methods or alternative ways of working to<br>improve productivity |
|             | An activity will typically be `non-routine or unfamiliar' because:  |
|             | <ul> <li>the task or context is likely to require<br/>some preparation, clarification or research<br/>(to separate the components and to<br/>identify what factors need to be<br/>considered, for example, time available,<br/>audience needs, accessibility of source,</li> </ul>  |



| Assessment requirements specified by a  | <ul> <li>types of content, message and meaning)<br/>before an approach can be planned; and</li> <li>the techniques required will involve a<br/>number of steps and at times be non-<br/>routine or unfamiliar</li> <li>See <i>IT User Assessment Strategy</i> available</li> </ul> |
|---|--|
| sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)  | from <u>www.e-skills.com</u>   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit and<br>relevant national occupational standards | Unit maps fully to competences outlined in IT<br>User National Occupational Standards version<br>3 (2009)<br>See <u>http://nos.e-skills.com</u> for examples of  |
|   | content and context applicable to this unit  |



| Title:  | M/502/4300 Using Email   |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 2  |
| Credit value:   | 3  |
| GLH:  | 20   |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Use e-mail software tools and techniques<br/>to compose and send messages</li> </ol> | <ol> <li>Select and use software tools to compose<br/>and format e-mail messages, including<br/>attachments</li> <li>Determine the message size and how it<br/>can be reduced</li> <li>Send e-mail messages to individuals and<br/>groups</li> <li>Describe how to stay safe and respect<br/>others when using e-mail</li> <li>Use an address book to organise contact<br/>information</li> </ol>  |
| 2. Manage incoming e-mail effectively   | <ul> <li>2.1 Follow guidelines and procedures for<br/>using e-mail</li> <li>2.2 Read and respond to e-mail messages<br/>appropriately</li> <li>2.3 Use email software tools and techniques<br/>to automate responses</li> <li>2.4 Describe how to archive e-mail messages,<br/>including attachments</li> <li>2.5 Organise, store and archive e-mail<br/>messages effectively</li> <li>2.6 Respond appropriately to e-mail problems</li> </ul> |

### Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding and use of using email to write and send messages. This could include requesting information relevant to the service, or to resources or services needed. Data protection protocols must be adhered to throughout the information exchange.

### Learning Outcome 2

This activity links to the previous task, where emails were sent. This task involves the receiving of emails. This could be emails responding to requests for data, or guidance or information relating to the support provided for individuals.



| Unit aim (s)  | This is the ability to make the best use of e-<br>mail software to safely and securely send,<br>receive and store messages.<br>This unit is about the skills and knowledge to<br>make effective use of a range of intermediate<br>email software tools to send, receive and store<br>messages for at times non-routine or<br>unfamiliar activities. Any aspect that is<br>unfamiliar may require support and advice<br>from others.                               |
|---|---|
|   | Email tools and techniques will be defined as<br>'intermediate' because:  |
|   | <ul> <li>the software tools and functions will be<br/>at times non-routine or unfamiliar; and</li> <li>the techniques required will involve a<br/>number of steps and at times be non-<br/>routine or unfamiliar</li> </ul>   |
|   | An activity will typically be `non-routine or unfamiliar' because:  |
|   | <ul> <li>the task or context is likely to require<br/>some analysis, clarification or research<br/>(to separate the components and to<br/>identify what factors need to be<br/>considered, for example, time available,<br/>audience needs, accessibility of source,<br/>types of content and meaning) before<br/>an approach can be planned; and the<br/>user will take some responsibility for<br/>developing the input or output of<br/>information</li> </ul> |
| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)       | See IT User Assessment Strategy available from www.e-skills.com   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit and<br>relevant national occupational standards | Unit maps fully to competences outlined in IT<br>User National Occupational Standards version<br>3 (2009)   |
|   | See <u>http://nos.e-skills.com</u> for examples of content and context applicable to this unit  |



| Title:   | A/502/4297 Using the Internet   |
|--|---|
| Level:   | 2   |
| Credit value:  | 4   |
| GLH:   | 30  |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:                           | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| 1. Connect to the internet                                       | <ul> <li>1.1 Identify different types of connection<br/>methods that can be used to access the<br/>Internet</li> <li>1.2 Identify the benefits and drawbacks of the<br/>connection method used</li> <li>1.3 Get online with an internet connection</li> <li>1.4 Use help facilities to solve internet<br/>connection problems</li> </ul>                  |
| 2. Use browser software to navigate web pages effectively        | <ul> <li>2.1 Select and use browser tools to navigate webpages</li> <li>2.2 Identify when to change browser settings to aid navigation</li> <li>2.3 Adjust browser settings to optimise performance and meet needs</li> <li>2.4 Identify ways to improve the performance of a browser</li> </ul>  |
| 3. Use browser tools to search for information from the internet | <ul> <li>3.1 Select and use appropriate search techniques to locate information efficiently</li> <li>3.2 Describe how well information meets requirements</li> <li>3.3 Manage and use references to make it easier to find information another time</li> <li>3.4 Download, organise and store different types of information from the internet</li> </ul> |
| 4. Use browser software to communicate information online        | <ul> <li>4.1 Identify opportunities to create, post or<br/>publish material to websites</li> <li>4.2 Select and use appropriate tools and<br/>techniques to communicate information<br/>online</li> <li>4.3 Use browser tools to share information<br/>sources with others</li> <li>4.4 Submit information online</li> </ul>                              |



| 5. | Understand the need for safety and security practices when working online | 5.1 Describe the threats to system<br>performance when working online         |
|----|---|---|
|    |   |   |
|    |   | 5.2 Work responsibly and take appropriate                                     |
|    |   | safety and security precautions when  |
|    |   | working online  |
|    |   | 5.3 Describe the threats to information                                       |
|    |   | security when working online  |
|    |   | 5.4 Manage personal access to online sources securely                         |
|    |   | 5.5 Describe the threats to user safety when working online                   |
|    |   | 5.6 Describe how to minimise internet security risks                          |
|    |   | 5.7 Apply laws, guidelines and procedures for<br>safe and secure internet use |
|    |   | 5.8 Explain the importance of the relevant                                    |
|    |   | laws affecting internet users   |

#### Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding and use of the internet. This could involve researching types of medication, financial services or benefits available, other service provision, specific illnesses or health conditions or college or leisure venues for individuals accessing services.

### Learning Outcome 2

This task continues from task 1, in that learners will actually be sourcing the evidence they require, using the selected browser software to source the required information.

### **Learning Outcome 3**

This task moves the search process further along and learners need to access the information they require and organise it so they can access it as and when they need to.

#### Learning Outcome 4

This task could involve sharing research findings with others, either through websites, portals or browser sites. This could include sharing reviews of services, facilities or resources, for example.

#### Learning Outcome 5

During the process of researching, saving, storing and sharing research findings and information, it is vital that safety and security are maintained at all times. This could involve, for example, password protection, anti-virus software or the use of encryption.



| Unit aim(s)   | This is the ability to set up and use appropriate<br>connection methods to access the Internet;<br>make the best use of browser software tools<br>and techniques to search for, retrieve and<br>exchange information using a browser or<br>public search engine, and work safely and<br>securely online.   |
|---|--|
|   | This unit is about the skills and knowledge<br>needed by the IT User to understand and<br>make effective use of a connection method<br>and intermediate Internet software tools and<br>techniques to search for and exchange<br>information for, at times, non-routine or<br>unfamiliar activities. Any aspect that is<br>unfamiliar will require support and advice from<br>others. |
|   | Internet tools and techniques at this level will be defined as:  |
|   | • the software tools and functions will be at times non-routine or unfamiliar; and   |
|   | <ul> <li>the range of techniques used for searching<br/>and exchanging information will involve a<br/>number of steps and at times be non-<br/>routine or unfamiliar</li> </ul>  |
|   | An activity will typically be `non-routine or<br>unfamiliar' because:  |
|   | <ul> <li>the task or context is likely to require some<br/>analysis, clarification or research (to<br/>separate the components and to identify<br/>what factors need to be considered, for<br/>example, time available, audience needs,<br/>accessibility of source, types of content and<br/>meaning) before an activity can be<br/>planned); and</li> </ul>                        |
|   | • the user will take some responsibility for selecting how to search for and exchange information  |
| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)       | See IT User Assessment Strategy available from www.e-skills.com  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit and<br>relevant national occupational standards | Unit maps fully to competences outlined in IT<br>User National Occupational Standards version<br>3 (2009)  |
|   | See <u>http://nos.e-skills.com</u> for examples of content and context applicable to this unit   |



| Title:   | K/502/4375 Using Mobile IT Devices   |
|--|--|
| Level:   | 2  |
| Credit value:  | 2  |
| GLH:   | 15   |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Set up and customise the mobile device to<br/>meet needs</li> </ol>       | <ol> <li>Describe the purpose of the different<br/>features and drawbacks of the mobile<br/>device</li> <li>Describe different methods that can be<br/>used to access mobile networks</li> <li>Prepare, set up and configure the mobile<br/>device for use</li> <li>Select, use and customise interface<br/>features and settings to meet needs and<br/>improve efficiency</li> <li>Describe any specific health and safety<br/>issues associated with the use of mobile<br/>devices</li> <li>Apply guidelines and procedures for the<br/>use of mobile devices</li> </ol> |
| <ol> <li>Select and use applications and files on<br/>the mobile device</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Select and use applications and files on the mobile device for an appropriate purpose</li> <li>2.2 Define file formats appropriate for mobile devices</li> <li>2.3 Use software or tools to prepare or convert files to an appropriate format for mobile devices</li> <li>2.4 Input data accurately into a mobile device</li> <li>2.5 Organise, store and retrieve data efficiently on a mobile device</li> </ul>   |



| 3. | Use tools and techniques to transfer data to and from mobile devices | 3.1 | Describe different types of secure<br>connection methods that can be used<br>between devices                            |
|----|--|-----|---|
|    |  | 3.2 | Describe software requirements and<br>techniques to connect and synchronise<br>devices                                  |
|    |  | 3.3 | Transfer information to and from mobile devices using secure connection procedures                                      |
|    |  | 3.4 | Synchronise mobile device data with source data   |
|    |  | 3.5 | Recognise copyright and other<br>constraints on the use and transfer of<br>information                                  |
|    |  | 3.6 | Explain why it is important to stay safe,<br>keep information secure and to respect<br>others when using mobile devices |
|    |  | 3.7 | Keep information secure when using a mobile device  |
| 4. | Optimise the performance of mobile                                   | 4.1 | Describe the factors that can affect  |
|    | devices  |     | performance of the mobile device and  |
|    |  |     | how to make improvements  |
|    |  | 4.2 | Use appropriate techniques to optimise  |
|    |  |     | the performance of the mobile device  |
|    |  | 4.3 | Describe problems that may occur with   |
|    |  |     | mobile devices and what causes them   |
|    |  | 4.4 | Use an appropriate fault-finding  |
|    |  |     | procedure to identify and solve problems  |
|    |  |     | with the mobile device  |
|    |  | 4.5 | Describe when to try to solve a problem<br>and where to get expert advice   |
| 1  |  |     |   |

### Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding and use of mobile devices. These could include smart phones, tablets or e-readers. Their use could include accessing, recording and storing care plan information and data or recording hours worked and tasks carried out.

### **Learning Outcome 2**

This task is a continuation and involves the learner identifying, using and storing the correct and appropriate applications and files on the mobile device. This again could relate to the updating of client information, recording medication administered or logging hours worked.

### **Learning Outcome 3**

This task involves transferring the data that has been input into a mobile device, both to and from the device. This could include downloading client data or details or updating training completion.



# Learning Outcome 4

When mobile devices are used it is important they are correctly maintained. This could involve how they are stored and charged, for example. It is important devices are maintained to ensure the information and data required is accessible and uploaded as this ensures consistency and safety for everyone accessing and working in the adult care service.

| Unit aim(s)  | This is the ability to set up and use mobile or<br>handheld devices such as a smartphone, PDA,<br>portable media player, electronic organiser or<br>data logger, for data capture, processing,<br>exchange and storage.<br>This unit is about the skills and knowledge to<br>make effective use of mobile or handheld<br>devices and use intermediate tools and<br>techniques to exchange information between<br>devices on a regular basis for activities. Any<br>aspect that is unfamiliar may require support<br>and advice from others.<br>The use of mobile technologies will be defined<br>as 'intermediate' because: |
|--|---|
|  | <ul> <li>the tools and software used will be<br/>additional to the tools and software pre-<br/>loaded onto the device and at times the<br/>techniques for use will be non-routine or<br/>unfamiliar; and</li> </ul>   |
|  | <ul> <li>the techniques used for sharing information<br/>and files between devices will involve a<br/>number of steps and at times be non-<br/>routine or unfamiliar</li> </ul>   |
|  | An activity will typically be `non-routine or<br>unfamiliar' because:   |
|  | <ul> <li>the task or context using mobile<br/>technologies is likely to require several<br/>steps and some consideration and planning<br/>before undertaking the task</li> </ul>  |
| Assessment requirements specified by a   | See IT User Assessment Strategy available   |
| sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)   | from <u>www.e-skills.com</u>  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit and relevant national occupational standards | Unit maps fully to competences outlined in IT<br>User National Occupational Standards version<br>3 (2009)   |
|  | See <u>http://nos.e-skills.com</u> for examples of<br>content and context applicable to this unit   |



| Title:  | H/502/9154 Internet safety for IT users   |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 1   |
| Credit value:   | 3   |
| GLH:  | 20  |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| 1. Understand the risks that can exist when using the internet  | <ol> <li>Identify risks to user safety and privacy</li> <li>Identify risks to data security</li> <li>Identify risks to system performance and<br/>integrity</li> <li>Outline how to minimise internet risks</li> <li>Outline factors that affect the reliability<br/>of information on websites</li> </ol>  |
| 2. Know how to safeguard self and others when working online  | <ul> <li>2.1 Take appropriate precautions to ensure<br/>own safety and privacy</li> <li>2.2 Protect personal information online</li> <li>2.3 Carry out checks on others' online<br/>identity</li> <li>2.4 Describe the forms and features of cyber<br/>bullying</li> <li>2.5 Identify when and how to report online<br/>safety issues</li> <li>2.6 Identify where to get online help and<br/>information on e-safety</li> </ul> |
| 3. Take precautions to maintain data security   | <ul> <li>3.1 Take appropriate precautions to maintain data security</li> <li>3.2 Take appropriate precautions to maintain system performance and integrity</li> <li>3.3 Use appropriate browser safety and security settings</li> <li>3.4 Use appropriate client software safety and security settings</li> </ul>   |
| <ol> <li>Follow legal constraints, guidelines and<br/>procedures which apply when working<br/>online</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>4.1 Identify legal constraints on the uploading and downloading of software and other digital content</li> <li>4.2 Identify legal constraints on online behaviour</li> <li>4.3 Correctly observe guidelines and procedures for the safe use of the internet</li> </ul>   |



# Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding of the risks they may face when using the internet. For example the risk of client data being accessed, or of records becoming corrupt, lost or damaged.

# Learning Outcome 2

This task requires learners to know about the methods of maintaining safety and security when using online resources. This could involve the use of password protection or encryption.

# Learning Outcome 3

This task requires learners to apply the knowledge gained in relation to maintaining safety and security when using online resources. This could involve checking others use password protection or encrypting confidential data or information relating to service users or service provision.

# Learning Outcome 4

Learners are required to understand and apply legal requirements, guidelines and procedures when working online. In an adult care setting this could involve password protection log in and log out or adhering to restrictions placed on internet use.

| Unit aim(s)                                 | This unit is about the ability of a user to<br>understand potential risks to self, equipment |
|---|--|
|   | and data security when using the internet. It  |
|   | concerns itself with working safely and  |
|   | responsibly online whilst taking appropriate   |
|   | measures to safeguard themselves and others.   |
| Assessment requirements specified by a      | See IT User Assessment Strategy available  |
| sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)  | from <u>www.e-skills.com</u>   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit and |  |
| relevant national occupational standards    |  |



| Title:  | R/502/4385 IT Software Fundamentals  |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 2  |
| Credit value:   | 3  |
| GLH:  | 20   |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Select and use appropriate software<br/>applications to meet needs and solve<br/>problems</li> </ol>                 | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe what types of information are needed</li> <li>1.2 Select and use software applications to develop, produce and present different types of information to meet needs and solve problems</li> </ul>  |
| <ol> <li>Enter, develop, combine and format<br/>different types of information to suit its<br/>meaning and purpose</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>2.1 Enter, organise, refine and format<br/>different types of information, applying<br/>editing techniques to meet needs</li> <li>2.2 Use appropriate techniques to combine<br/>image and text components</li> <li>2.3 Combine information of different forms<br/>or from different sources</li> <li>2.4 Select and use appropriate page layout<br/>to present information effectively</li> </ul> |
| 3. Present information in ways that are fit for purpose and audience  | <ul> <li>3.1 Work accurately and proof-read, using software facilities where appropriate</li> <li>3.2 Identify inconsistencies or quality issues with the presentation of information</li> <li>3.3 Produce information that is fit for purpose and audience using accepted layouts and conventions as appropriate</li> </ul>   |
| 4. Evaluate the selection and use of IT tools and facilities to present information   | <ul> <li>4.1 Review and modify work as it progresses to ensure the result is fit for purpose and audience and to inform future judgements</li> <li>4.2 Review the effectiveness of the IT tools selected to meet needs in order to improve future work</li> </ul>  |

#### Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding and use of software applications. This could include



applications dedicated to their setting relating to client needs or service provision, or applications which deliver and record training.

#### **Learning Outcome 2**

This task leads on from task 1 and requires learners to access, develop, combine and format types of information needed to meet the needs of the service. This could involve the development of files, formats and information relating to care planning, continuing professional development or staffing levels.

#### **Learning Outcome 3**

Once information has been accessed and collated, it is important to present it in a format which can easily be understood by the intended audience. This could involve service information for clients, so needs to meet their communication needs, or budgetary information for senior managers. Both audiences could have a diverse range of needs in relation to the provision of information.

#### Learning Outcome 4

Once the information or data has been presented, the choice of format should be evaluated to ensure it met the target needs. Did clients understand what was presented to them? Was data appropriately presented?

| Unit aim(s) | This is the ability to decide which IT software<br>application is appropriate to use to process<br>different types of data, and to use a range of<br>applications to produce and present<br>information.  |
|-------------|---|
|             | This unit is about the skills and knowledge to<br>select and use IT tools to develop and produce<br>information independently for activities that<br>are at times non-routine or unfamiliar. Any<br>aspect that is unfamiliar will require support<br>and advice from other people.   |
|             | An activity will typically be `non-routine or unfamiliar' because:  |
|             | <ul> <li>the task or context is likely to require some<br/>analysis, clarification or research (to<br/>separate the components and to identify<br/>what factors need to be considered, for<br/>example, time available, audience needs,<br/>accessibility of source, types of content,<br/>message and meaning) before an approach<br/>can be planned;</li> </ul> |
|             | <ul> <li>the user will take some responsibility for<br/>developing the input or output of<br/>information; and</li> </ul>   |



|  | <ul> <li>the techniques required will involve a<br/>number of steps and at times be non-<br/>routine or unfamiliar</li> </ul> |
|--|---|
| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)    | See IT User Assessment Strategy available from www.e-skills.com   |
| Details of the relationship of the unit and relevant national occupational standards | Unit maps fully to competences outlined in IT<br>User National Occupational Standards version<br>3 (2009)                     |
|  | See <u>http://nos.e-skills.com</u> for examples of content and context applicable to this unit                                |



| Title:  | L/502/4207 IT User Fundamentals  |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 2  |
| Credit value:   | 3  |
| GLH:  | 20   |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:                              | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1. Use IT systems to meet a variety of needs                        | <ol> <li>1.1 Use correct procedures to start and<br/>shutdown an IT system</li> <li>1.2 Select and use interface features<br/>effectively to interact with IT systems</li> <li>1.3 Select and adjust system settings as<br/>appropriate to needs</li> <li>1.4 Select and use a communication service to<br/>access the Internet</li> <li>1.5 Use appropriate terminology when<br/>describing IT systems</li> </ol> |
| 2. Manage information storage and retrieval appropriately           | <ul> <li>2.1 Manage files and folders to enable efficient information retrieval</li> <li>2.2 Identify when and why to use different types of storage media</li> <li>2.3 Organise and store information, using general and local conventions where appropriate</li> </ul>   |
| 3. Follow and understand the need for safety and security practices | <ul> <li>3.1 Work safely and take steps to minimise physical stress</li> <li>3.2 Describe the danger of computer viruses, and how to minimise risk</li> <li>3.3 Keep information secure</li> <li>3.4 Explain why it is important to stay safe and to respect others when using IT-based communication</li> <li>3.5 Follow relevant guidelines and procedures for the safe and secure use of IT</li> </ul>          |
| 4. Maintain system and troubleshoot IT system problems              | <ul> <li>4.1 Describe why routine and non-routine maintenance is important and when to carry it out</li> <li>4.2 Carry out regular routine maintenance of IT systems safely</li> <li>4.3 Identify sources of help and how to get expert advice</li> <li>4.4 Identify IT problems and take appropriate</li> </ul>   |



action

### Additional information about this unit (amplification for assessment criteria)

#### Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding and use of IT systems which are relevant to their role. This could include programmes or applications specific to their setting, for example training platforms, or medication administration apps.

### Learning Outcome 2

Leading on from task 1, this requires learners to manage and store information and data in logical and safe and secure way. This could involve file encryption, virtual storage or file encryption.

### Learning Outcome 3

Learners are required to understand and apply legal requirements, guidelines and procedures when using IT based communication. In an adult care setting this could involve password protection log in and log out or adhering to restrictions placed on internet use.

### **Learning Outcome 4**

This task requires learners to apply the knowledge gained in relation to maintaining safety and security when using online resources. This could involve checking others use password protection or encrypting confidential data or information relating to service users or service provision.

| Unit aim(s) | This is the ability to use IT systems sensibly<br>and purposefully to meet needs, to do so<br>safely and securely in line with organisational<br>guidelines, to respond appropriately to IT<br>problems and to evaluate the use of IT<br>systems.   |
|-------------|---|
|             | This unit is about the skills and techniques to<br>select and use suitable techniques to operate<br>IT systems for a varied range of activities,<br>some of which are at times non-routine or<br>unfamiliar, and take some responsibility for<br>responding appropriately to IT errors and<br>problems. |
|             | An activity will typically be `non-routine or unfamiliar' because:  |
|             | <ul> <li>the task or context is likely to require<br/>some analysis, clarification or research,<br/>before an approach can be planned; and</li> </ul>   |
|             | <ul> <li>the techniques required will involve a<br/>number of steps and at times be non-<br/>routine or unfamiliar</li> </ul>   |



| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)    | See IT User Assessment Strategy available from www.e-skills.com   |
|--|---|
| Details of the relationship of the unit and relevant national occupational standards | Unit maps fully to competences outlined in IT<br>User National Occupational Standards version<br>3 (2009) |
|  | See <u>http://nos.e-skills.com</u> for examples of content and context applicable to this unit            |



| Title:  | Y/502/4257 IT Security for Users  |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 2   |
| Credit value:   | 2   |
| GLH:  | 15  |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Select and use appropriate methods to<br/>minimise security risk to IT systems and<br/>data</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe the security issues that may threaten system performance</li> <li>1.2 Apply a range of security precautions to protect IT systems and data</li> <li>1.3 Describe the threats to system and information security and integrity</li> <li>1.4 Keep information secure and manage personal access to information sources securely</li> <li>1.5 Describe ways to protect hardware, software and data and minimise security risk</li> <li>1.6 Apply guidelines and procedures for the secure use of IT</li> <li>1.7 Describe why it is important to backup data and how to do so securely</li> <li>1.8 Select and use effective backup procedures for systems and data</li> </ul> |

#### Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding and use of IT security. In adult care settings security of information is vital, for example ensuring individuals' information and records are securely stored. This could include using passwords to log in and shutting down systems or logging off before leaving the systems and data.

| Unit aim(s) | This is the ability to protect hardware,<br>software and the data within an IT system<br>against theft, malfunction and unauthorised<br>access.  |
|-------------|--|
|             | This unit is about the skills and knowledge<br>needed by the IT User to avoid common<br>security risks and control access to software<br>and data; and use a wider range of methods to |



|  | protect software and data (e.g. from<br>exchanging information by e-mail or when<br>downloading software from the Internet). |
|--|--|
| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)    | See IT User Assessment Strategy available from www.e-skills.com  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit and relevant national occupational standards | Unit maps fully to competences outlined in IT<br>User National Occupational Standards version<br>3 (2009)                    |
|  | See <u>http://nos.e-skills.com</u> for examples of content and context applicable to this unit                               |



| Title:  | M/502/4619 Project Management<br>Software   |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 2   |
| Credit value:   | 4   |
| GLH:  | 30  |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Create and define a project</li> <li>Enter and edit information about project tasks and resources</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>1.1 Identify the critical information about the project that must be included</li> <li>1.2 Create, store and retrieve project management files effectively in line with local guidelines for storage and use of data where applicable</li> <li>1.3 Define the project file properties and project options</li> <li>2.1 Identify the critical tasks and milestones to be completed</li> <li>2.2 Enter and edit information about project tasks</li> <li>2.3 Identify any deadlines and constraints which apply to the project</li> <li>2.4 Identify issues of resource availability and utilisation</li> <li>2.5 Create and apply a task calendar for scheduling tasks</li> <li>2.6 Enter and edit information about</li> </ul> |
|   | resources for use in the project<br>2.7 Adjust templates for project information<br>2.8 Set up and edit dependencies between<br>tasks   |
| 3. Update information about project progress  | <ul> <li>3.1 Describe the methods to update and report information about project progress</li> <li>3.2 Use editing and formatting techniques to update project elements</li> <li>3.3 Update task status in line with progress</li> <li>3.4 Update information about resources as required</li> <li>3.5 Compare actual progress with project baseline and reschedule uncompleted tasks</li> <li>3.6 Identify any risks and issues that may have an impact on the project</li> </ul>  |



| <ol> <li>Select and use appropriate tools and<br/>techniques to display and report on<br/>project status</li> </ol> | <ul><li>4.1 Select and create project reports to meet needs</li><li>4.2 Use filtering and formatting techniques to</li></ul> |
|---|--|
|   | <ul><li>display project information to meet needs</li><li>4.3 Share project information with other applications</li></ul>    |

#### Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding and use of data management software. Learners are required to identify a project they intend working on. In adult care this could include identifying areas of service improvement to maintain market share, or comparing and contrasting staff competencies.

# Learning Outcome 2

Learners are required to identify and enter the tasks to be carried out, for example who will be approached, by when and how.

# Learning Outcome 3

Continuing on, learners are required to update project timelines and milestones, to ensure their planning is current and valid.

#### **Learning Outcome 4**

Learners are required to use appropriate tools in reporting their project findings. They need to consider their audience and the methods they will use. For example managers or individuals accessing services may require different approaches to be adopted.

| Unit aim(s) | This is the ability to use a software application<br>that plans, organises and monitors completion<br>of the component tasks within a project in<br>logical sequence, given constraints of people   |
|-------------|---|
|             | and resource availability. This is not about<br>managing a project although these standards<br>may also be applicable to the project manager.   |
|             | This unit is about the skills and knowledge<br>required by an IT User to select and use a<br>wide range of intermediate project<br>management software tools and techniques to<br>input and edit information that is at times non-<br>routine or unfamiliar in order to support the<br>planning and management of projects. |
|             | Project management tools and techniques will be described as 'intermediate' because:  |
|             | <ul> <li>the software tools and functions used will<br/>be at times non-routine;</li> </ul>   |



|  | <ul> <li>the choice and use of input, manipulation<br/>and output techniques will need to take<br/>account of a number of factors or<br/>elements; and</li> </ul>                          |
|--|--|
|  | <ul> <li>the user will take some responsibility for<br/>inputting, structuring, editing and<br/>presenting the information, which at times<br/>may be non-routine or unfamiliar</li> </ul> |
| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)    | See IT User Assessment Strategy available from www.e-skills.com  |
| Details of the relationship of the unit and relevant national occupational standards | Unit maps fully to competences outlined in IT<br>User National Occupational Standards version<br>3 (2009)  |
|  | See <u>http://nos.e-skills.com</u> for examples of content and context applicable to this unit   |



| Title:  | M/502/4622 Presentation Software   |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 2  |
| Credit value:   | 4  |
| GLH:  | 30   |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| <ol> <li>Input and combine text and other<br/>information within presentation slides</li> </ol>       | <ol> <li>Identify what types of information are<br/>required for the presentation</li> <li>Enter text and other information using<br/>layouts appropriate to type of<br/>information</li> <li>Insert charts and tables into<br/>presentation slides</li> <li>Insert images, video or sound to<br/>enhance the presentation</li> <li>Identify any constraints which may<br/>affect the presentation</li> <li>Organise and combine information of<br/>different forms or from different sources<br/>for presentations</li> <li>Store and retrieve presentation files<br/>effectively, in line with local guidelines</li> </ol> |
| <ol> <li>Use presentation software tools to<br/>structure, edit and format slide sequences</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>and conventions where available</li> <li>2.1 Identify what slide structure and themes to use</li> <li>2.2 Select, change and use appropriate templates for slides</li> <li>2.3 Select and use appropriate techniques to edit slides and presentations to meet needs</li> <li>2.4 Select and use appropriate techniques to format slides and presentations</li> <li>2.5 Identify what presentation effects to use to enhance the presentation</li> <li>2.6 Select and use animation and transition effects appropriately to enhance slide sequences</li> </ul>   |



| 3. Prepare slideshow for presentation | 3.1 Describe how to present slides to meet needs and communicate effectively                                      |
|---------------------------------------|---|
|                                       | 3.2 Prepare slideshow for presentation  |
|                                       | 3.3 Check presentation meets needs, using   |
|                                       | IT tools and making corrections as  |
|                                       | necessary   |
|                                       | 3.4 Identify and respond to any quality<br>problems with presentations to ensure<br>that presentations meet needs |

# Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding and use of presentation software. The intended presentation could be the result of research carried out, or a topic to be included in a team meeting or staff training event. For example new legislation or guidance or guidance relating to a condition or illness staff have not supported a person with before.

# Learning Outcome 2

Learners are required to structure and format their presentation. They may wish to include tables, illustrations or data, for example.

# **Learning Outcome 3**

Learners are asked to carry out final checks in preparation for presenting the information prepared. This should include checking how this will be presented, to whom and when. For example other carers, relatives or other stakeholders.



| Unit aim(s)   | This is the ability to use software applications<br>to produce effective presentations, which<br>include a combination of media (e.g. images,<br>animation and sound) for education,<br>entertainment or information sharing.  |
|---|--|
|   | This unit is about the skills and knowledge<br>required by an IT user to select and use a wide<br>range of intermediate presentation software<br>tools and techniques effectively to produce<br>presentations that are at times non-routine or<br>unfamiliar. Any aspect that is unfamiliar may<br>require support and advice from others. |
|   | Presentation tools and techniques at this level will be described as 'intermediate' because:   |
|   | <ul> <li>the software tools and functions used will<br/>be at times non-routine or unfamiliar;</li> </ul>  |
|   | <ul> <li>the choice and use of input, manipulation<br/>and output techniques will need to take<br/>account of a number of factors or<br/>elements; and</li> </ul>  |
|   | <ul> <li>the user will take some responsibility for<br/>inputting, structuring, editing and<br/>presenting the information, which at times<br/>may be non-routine or unfamiliar</li> </ul>   |
| Assessment requirements specified by a  | See IT User Assessment Strategy available<br>from www.e-skills.com   |
| sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)<br>Details of the relationship of the unit and | Unit maps fully to competences outlined in IT  |
| relevant national occupational standards  | User National Occupational Standards version<br>3 (2009)   |
|   | See <u>http://nos.e-skills.com</u> for examples of content and context applicable to this unit   |



| Title:  | F/502/4625 Spreadsheet Software  |
|---|--|
| Level:  | 2  |
| Credit value:   | 4  |
| GLH:  | 30   |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:  |
| 1. Use a spreadsheet to enter, edit and organise numerical and other data                                     | <ul> <li>1.1 Identify what numerical and other<br/>information is needed in the spreadsheet<br/>and how it should be structured</li> <li>1.2 Enter and edit numerical and other data<br/>accurately</li> <li>1.3 Combine and link data across worksheets</li> <li>1.4 Store and retrieve spreadsheet files<br/>effectively, in line with local guidelines<br/>and conventions where available</li> </ul>   |
| 2. Select and use appropriate formulas and data analysis tools to meet requirements                           | <ul> <li>2.1 Identify which tools and techniques to use to analyse and manipulate data to meet requirements</li> <li>2.2 Select and use a range of appropriate functions and formulas to meet calculation requirements</li> <li>2.3 Use a range of tools and techniques to analyse and manipulate data to meet requirements</li> </ul>   |
| <ol> <li>Select and use tools and techniques to<br/>present and format spreadsheet<br/>information</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>3.1 Plan how to present and format spreadsheet information effectively to meet needs</li> <li>3.2 Select and use appropriate tools and techniques to format spreadsheet cells, rows, columns and worksheets</li> <li>3.3 Select and format an appropriate chart or graph type to display selected information</li> <li>3.4 Select and use appropriate page layout to present and print spreadsheet information</li> <li>3.5 Check information meets needs, using spreadsheet tools and making corrections as necessary</li> <li>3.6 Describe how to find errors in spreadsheet formulas</li> <li>3.7 Respond appropriately to any problems with spreadsheets</li> </ul> |



#### Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding and use of spreadsheet software to create, maintain and store. The use of spreadsheets could include costings, staffing hours and costs or how the service is accessed.

# Learning Outcome 2

Once the spreadsheets have been established, formulas can be used to support the analysis required. This could relate to breaking down staff costs for a specific period of time or to support analysis of spend on food, or infection prevention and control measures, for example.

# **Learning Outcome 3**

Learners are asked to present their findings, using formulas and a format which meet the needs of the intended audience. For example managers might require summary information and not the full spreadsheet.

| Unit aim(s) | This is the ability to use a software application<br>designed to record data in rows and columns,<br>perform calculations with numerical data and<br>present information using charts and graphs.   |
|-------------|---|
|             | This level is about the skills and knowledge<br>required by an IT user to select and use a wide<br>range of intermediate spreadsheet software<br>tools and techniques to produce present and<br>check spreadsheets that are at times non-<br>routine or unfamiliar. Any aspect that is<br>unfamiliar may require support and advice<br>from others.           |
|             | Spreadsheet software tools and techniques will be described as 'Intermediate' because:  |
|             | <ul> <li>the range of data entry, manipulation and<br/>outputting techniques will be at times non-<br/>routine or unfamiliar;</li> </ul>  |
|             | <ul> <li>the tools, formulas and functions need to<br/>analyse and interpret the data requires<br/>knowledge and understanding (for<br/>example, mathematical, logical, statistical<br/>or financial); and</li> <li>the user will take some responsibility for<br/>setting up or developing the structure and<br/>functionality of the spreadsheet</li> </ul> |



| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)    | See IT User Assessment Strategy available from www.e-skills.com   |
|--|---|
| Details of the relationship of the unit and relevant national occupational standards | Unit maps fully to competences outlined in IT<br>User National Occupational Standards version<br>3 (2009) |
|  | See <u>http://nos.e-skills.com</u> for examples of content and context applicable to this unit            |



| Title:   | R/502/4631 Website Software   |
|--|---|
| Level:   | 2   |
| Credit value:  | 4   |
| GLH:   | 30  |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:   | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| 1. Create structures and styles for websites                                       | <ul> <li>1.1 Describe what website content and<br/>layout will be needed for each page</li> <li>1.2 Plan and create web page templates to<br/>layout</li> <li>1.3 Select and use website features and<br/>structures to help the user navigate<br/>round web pages within the site</li> <li>1.4 Create, select and use styles to keep the<br/>appearance of web pages consistent and<br/>make them easy to understand</li> <li>1.5 Describe how copyright and other<br/>constraints may affect the website</li> <li>1.6 Describe what access issues may need<br/>to be taken into account</li> <li>1.7 Describe what file types to use for<br/>saving content</li> <li>1.8 Store and retrieve files effectively, in line<br/>with local guidelines and conventions</li> </ul> |
| <ol> <li>Use website software tools to prepare<br/>content for websites</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>where available</li> <li>2.1 Prepare content for web pages so that it is ready for editing and formatting</li> <li>2.2 Organise and combine information needed for web pages including across different software</li> <li>2.3 Select and use appropriate editing and formatting techniques to aid both clarity and navigation</li> <li>2.4 Select and use appropriate development techniques to link information across pages</li> <li>2.5 Change the file formats appropriately for content</li> <li>2.6 Check web pages meet needs, using IT tools and making corrections as necessary</li> </ul>  |



| 3. Pu | Publish websites | 3.1 | Select and use appropriate testing     |
|-------|------------------|-----|--|
|       |                  |     | methods to check that all elements of  |
|       |                  |     | websites are working as planned        |
|       |                  | 3.2 | Identify any quality problems with     |
|       |                  |     | websites and how to respond to them    |
|       |                  | 3.3 | Select and use an appropriate          |
|       |                  |     | programme to upload and publish the    |
|       |                  |     | website                                |
|       |                  | 3.4 | Respond appropriately to problems with |
|       |                  |     | multiple page websites                 |
|       |                  |     |  |

# Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding and use of website software. This could include reviewing and amending an existing website for the service, or creating a brand new website for the service, for example.

# Learning Outcome 2

Learners are required to add content to the already prepared website. Information could include geographical location of a setting, staffing structure or what the setting provides.

# Learning Outcome 3

The site now has to be tested for functionality prior to it being uploaded and published.

| Unit aim(s) | This is the ability to use a software application designed for planning, designing and building websites.   |
|-------------|---|
|             | This unit is about the skills and knowledge<br>required by an IT user to select and use a wide<br>range of intermediate website software tools<br>and techniques to produce multiple-page<br>websites. Any aspect that is unfamiliar may<br>require support and advice from others. |
|             | Website software tools and techniques will be described as 'intermediate' because:  |
|             | <ul> <li>the software tools and functions involved<br/>will at times be non-routine or unfamiliar;</li> </ul>   |
|             | <ul> <li>the choice and use of development<br/>techniques will need to take account of a<br/>number of factors or elements; and</li> </ul>  |
|             | <ul> <li>the user will take some responsibility for<br/>planning the website, creating or altering<br/>the template, inputting, manipulating,<br/>linking and uploading the content</li> </ul>  |



| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body (if appropriate)    | See IT User Assessment Strategy available from www.e-skills.com   |
|--|---|
| Details of the relationship of the unit and relevant national occupational standards | Unit maps fully to competences outlined in IT<br>User National Occupational Standards version<br>3 (2009) |
|  | See <u>http://nos.e-skills.com</u> for examples of content and context applicable to this unit            |



| Title:  | R/502/4628 Word Processing Software   |
|---|---|
| Level:  | 2   |
| Credit value:   | 4   |
| GLH:  | 30  |
| Learning outcomes<br>The learner will:  | Assessment criteria<br>The learner can:   |
| <ol> <li>Enter and combine text and other<br/>information accurately within word<br/>processing documents</li> </ol>            | <ul> <li>1.1 Identify what types of information are needed in documents</li> <li>1.2 Use appropriate techniques to enter text and other information accurately and efficiently</li> <li>1.3 Select and use appropriate templates for different purposes</li> <li>1.4 Identify when and how to combine and merge information from other software or other documents</li> <li>1.5 Select and use a range of editing tools to amend document content</li> <li>1.6 Combine or merge information within a document from a range of sources</li> <li>1.7 Store and retrieve document and template files effectively, in line with local guidelines and conventions where available</li> </ul> |
| 2. Create and modify layout and structures for word processing documents  | <ul> <li>2.1 Identify the document requirements for structure and style</li> <li>2.2 Identify what templates and styles are available and when to use them</li> <li>2.3 Create and modify columns, tables and forms to organise information</li> <li>2.4 Select and apply styles to text</li> </ul>   |
| <ol> <li>Use word processing software tools to<br/>format and present documents effectively<br/>to meet requirements</li> </ol> | <ul> <li>3.1 Identify how the document should be formatted to aid meaning</li> <li>3.2 Select and use appropriate techniques to format characters and paragraphs</li> <li>3.3 Select and use appropriate page and section layouts to present and print documents</li> <li>3.4 Describe any quality problems with documents</li> <li>3.5 Check documents meet needs, using IT</li> </ul>   |



| 3.6 | tools and making corrections as necessary<br>Respond appropriately to quality problems<br>with documents so that outcomes meet<br>needs |
|-----|---|
|-----|---|

#### Learning Outcome 1

Learners can use their experience of the current or previous adult care work settings to demonstrate their understanding and use of word processing software. This could relate to information and data from any aspect of adult care service delivery. For example staff training resources, policies and procedures or care planning records and reports.

#### Learning Outcome 2

Learners are also required to make modifications to the layout and structure of the prepared documents. This could involve aligning columns, adding more text or adding page breaks. This will ensure the content is accessible to the intended audience, for example current or potential staff or individuals considering accessing services.

#### Learning Outcome 3

Learners should now use word processing software tools to finalise and present the information. This could involve checking the font, formatting or spelling. This will ensure it can be accessed by the intended audience.

| Unit aim(s)   | This is the ability to use a software application<br>designed for the creation, editing and<br>production of largely text-based documents.<br>This unit is about the skills and knowledge<br>required by an IT user to select and use a<br>range of intermediate word processing<br>software tools and techniques to produce<br>documents that are at times non-routine or<br>unfamiliar. Any aspect that is unfamiliar may<br>require support and advice from others.<br>Word processing tools and techniques will be |
|---|--|
|   | <ul> <li>described as 'intermediate' because:</li> <li>the software tools and functions will be at times non-routine or unfamiliar;</li> </ul>   |
|   | <ul> <li>the choice of techniques will need to take<br/>account of a number of factors or<br/>elements; and</li> </ul>   |
|   | <ul> <li>the user will take some responsibility for<br/>the inputting, manipulating and outputting<br/>of the information</li> </ul>   |
| Assessment requirements specified by a sector or regulatory body (if appropriate) | See IT User Assessment Strategy available from www.e-skills.com  |



| Details of the relationship of the unit and relevant national occupational standards | Unit maps fully to competences outlined in IT<br>User National Occupational Standards version<br>3 (2009)                     |
|--|---|
|  | See <a href="http://nos.e-skills.com">http://nos.e-skills.com</a> for examples of content and context applicable to this unit |